

2BLIB5

HISTORY OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE



DR. C.V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY

Chhattisgarh, Bilaspur AN AISECT GROUP UNIVERSITY

Approved by : PCI | AICTE | NCTE | BCI | Member of : AIU | Joint Committee : (UGC | DEB | AICTE) | Recognized by : UGC | A NAAC Accredited University

DR. C.V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY

Kargi Road, Kota, Bilaspur, (C. G.),

Ph. 07753-253801, 07753-253872

E-mail: info@cvru.ac.in, Website: www.cvru.ac.in

2BLIB5

HISTORY OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE

Credit- 4

Subject Expert Team

Dr. Sarita Mishra

Professor, Dr. C.V. Raman
University,
Chhattisgarh

Dr. Rakesh Kumar Khare

Professor, Rabindranath Tagore
University,
Madhya Pradesh

Dr. Payal Chakraborty

Professor, Dr. C.V. Raman
University,
Chhattisgarh

Dr. Sangeeta Singh

Professor DR. C.V. Raman
University
Chhattisgarh

Course Edited By:

Dr. Rakesh Kumar Khare

Professor, Rabindranath Tagore University,
Madhya Pradesh

Unit Written By:

Dr. Anjani Saraf

Professor, Dr. C.V. Raman University,
Chhattisgarh

Warning: All rights reserved, No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted or utilized or stored in any form or by any means now known or hereinafter invented, electronic, digital or mechanical, including photocopying, scanning, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

Edition: 2026

Publish by: DR. C.V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY

Kargi Road, Kota, Bilaspur, (C. G.),
Ph. 07753-253801, 07753-253872

STRUCTURE OF PROGRAMME

TITLE OF THE PROGRAM	: BACHELOR OF LIBRARY INFORMATION SCIENCE
PROGRAM TYPE	: UNDER GRADUATE
PROGRAM CREDITS	: 40
PROGRAM DURATION	: 1 YEAR
ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA	: GRADUATION ANY DISCIPLINE

PROGRAMME OBJECTIVE:

- Make him/her alert and sharp about Surrounding Library Activity
- To be able to analyse the different kinds of Library Problems
- Complete Development about Library.
- Making Research in mind and approach.
- To be able to understanding The Library.
- Complete Knowledge about Library.
- Preparing him/her for national level competitive examination

PROGRAMME OUTCOME:

- Student's expected capabilities in this area at the end of semester
- Students should be able to identify the problems and capable to decide the application for future development.
- Demonstrate a broad and coherent body of knowledge with depth in the underlying principles and concepts;
- Integrate knowledge of the diversity of cultures and people;
- Apply critical thinking, independent judgment, intercultural sensitivity and regional, national and global perspectives to identify and solve problems in the discipline of the Arts, Languages and Social Sciences;
- Demonstrate capacity for reflection, planning, ethical decision- making and inter-disciplinary team work in diverse contexts of community engagement.

STRUCTURE OF COURSE

COURSE TITLE	:	HISTORY OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE
COURSE TYPE	:	CORE COURSE
COURSE CODE	:	2BLIB5
COURSE CREDITS	:	04
SEMESTER	:	02

COURSE LEARNING OBJECTIVES:

- Make him/her alert and sharp about Surrounding Library Activity
- To be able to understand the different kinds of Library Problems
- Complete Development about Library.
- Making Research in mind and approach.
- To be able to understanding The Library Services
- Complete Knowledge about Library Reference and Information Sources and Services
- Preparing him/her for national level competitive examination

COURSE LEARNING OUTCOMES:

- Student's expected capabilities in this area at the end of semester.
- Students should be able to identify the problems and capable to decide the application for future development.

BLOCK/UNIT STRUCTURE		
BLOCK – 1	EVOLUTION OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE EDUCATION IN INDIA	01 – 76
Unit-1	History of Library and Information Science Education in India	03
Unit-2	Library and Information Policy at the National Level	23
Unit-3	Growth and Development of LIS Education in India	43
Unit-4	LIS Education Before and After Independence	59
BLOCK – 2	LIS EDUCATION AND FOUNDATIONAL PRINCIPLES	77– 112
Unit-5	LIS Education Development in Central India	79
Unit-6	Five Laws of Library Science and Their Implications in Library and Information Activities	95
BLOCK – 3	LIBRARIES AND THEIR ROLE IN SOCIETY	113 – 166
Unit-7	Role of the Library in Modern Society	115
Unit-8	Role of Libraries in Education (Formal and Non-Formal)	131
Unit-9	Publicity and Extension Activities in Libraries	149
BLOCK – 4	LIBRARY MOVEMENTS AND KEY CONTRIBUTORS	167 – 238
Unit-10	Library Movement in India	169
Unit-11	Contribution of S.R. Ranganathan to Library Science	187
Unit-12	Contribution of Melvil Dewey to Library Science	205
Unit-13	Role of Union and State Governments in the Improvement of Library Services	221
BLOCK – 5	LIBRARIANSHIP AS A PROFESSION AND ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS	239 – 304
Unit-14	Attributes of a Profession: Librarianship as a Profession	241
Unit-15	Professional Ethics in Librarianship	257
Unit-16	Philosophy of Library Science	273
Unit-17	Freedom of Access to Information and Intellectual Property Rights (IPR)*	289

BLOCK – 1	EVOLUTION OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE EDUCATION IN INDIA	01-76
Unit 1	History of Library and Information Science Education in India	03
Unit 2	Library and Information Policy at the National Level	23
Unit 3	Growth and Development of LIS Education in India	43
Unit 4	LIS Education Before and After Independence	59



The evolution of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India reflects the country's growing recognition of the importance of organized knowledge and information management. From its early beginnings in the colonial period to the structured academic programs of today, LIS education has undergone significant transformation. Initially focused on training personnel for managing public and university libraries, it gradually expanded to include professional education, research, and specialized areas of information science. National policies have played a crucial role in shaping the curriculum, standardizing practices, and promoting professional development. The growth of LIS education in India can be traced through various phases—pre-independence, post-independence, and the modern era—each contributing to the establishment of a robust academic and professional framework. Understanding this evolution is essential for appreciating the current trends, challenges, and future directions in LIS education in India.

UNIT 1

HISTORY OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE EDUCATION IN INDIA

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 1.1 Introduction**
- 1.2 Objective**
- 1.3 Library and Information Science (LIS) Education in India**
- 1.4 Early Developments in LIS Education in India**
- 1.5 Growth of LIS Education During the Pre-Independence Period**
- 1.6 Expansion of LIS Education Post-Independence**
- 1.7 Introduction of Advanced LIS Courses and Specializations**
- 1.8 Role of UGC and Other Regulatory Bodies in LIS Education**
- 1.9 Challenges Faced in LIS Education in India**
- 1.10 Recent Trends and Developments in LIS Education**
- 1.11 Future of LIS Education in India**
- 1.12 Summary**
- 1.13 Glossary**
- 1.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 1.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 1.16 Reference**
- 1.17 Exercise**

1.1 INTRODUCTION

The history of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India dates back to the early 20th century when the need for systematic library training was first recognized. Before formalized LIS education, library professionals in India relied on self-learning, apprenticeships, and training from international institutions. The first formal training program in library science was introduced in 1911 by W.A. Borden at the Maharaja Sayajirao University in Baroda under the patronage of Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III. This marked a significant step toward professionalizing librarianship in India. The course aimed at imparting essential skills in library management, organization, and classification, influenced by American models of library education. The establishment

NOTE

of this course was followed by the introduction of a university-level diploma program in library science at the University of Madras in 1937, which was led by Dr. S. R. Ranganathan, the father of library science in India. His contributions, particularly the Five Laws of Library Science and Colon Classification, played a foundational role in shaping LIS education. Post-independence, LIS education witnessed significant expansion and institutionalization, leading to the introduction of diploma, degree, and research programs in universities across the country. The University Grants Commission (UGC) played a pivotal role in standardizing LIS curricula, ensuring uniformity and quality in LIS education. The establishment of various professional associations, such as the Indian Library Association (ILA) and the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) in Bangalore, further strengthened LIS education and research. With the advent of digital technologies, LIS programs expanded to include information retrieval, knowledge management, digital libraries, and bibliometrics. Today, LIS education continues to evolve, addressing contemporary challenges such as big data management, artificial intelligence in information retrieval, and open-access resources. The historical development of LIS education in India is a testament to its adaptability and relevance in an increasingly digital and globalized world.

1.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To explore the origins and early developments of LIS education in India.
- To analyze the contributions of pioneers like W.A. Borden and Dr. S. R. Ranganathan.
- To examine the role of universities and professional associations in shaping LIS education.
- To assess the influence of technological advancements on LIS curricula.
- To assess the future trends and challenges in LIS education.

1.3 LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE (LIS) EDUCATION IN INDIA

Library and Information Science (LIS) Education in India has undergone a profound evolution, mirroring the broader shifts in technology, academia, and societal information needs. Traditionally rooted in classical librarianship, early LIS education in India concentrated on manual techniques such as cataloguing, classification, and managing

NOTE

print collections. These foundational areas, though still relevant, were primarily aimed at maintaining physical records and assisting library users with basic reference services. However, as the digital revolution gained momentum and the information landscape diversified, the role of libraries transformed into dynamic knowledge and information hubs. Consequently, LIS education expanded its scope to include sophisticated areas such as digital resource management, metadata creation, online information retrieval systems, and the integration of artificial intelligence and data analytics into library functions. This shift not only redefined the skill set required for modern library professionals but also emphasized the need for a more interdisciplinary and technology-oriented approach in LIS training programs. The overarching objective of LIS education remains to develop skilled professionals who can manage, curate, and disseminate information ethically and efficiently across various platforms and formats.

The institutional and regulatory framework in India has played a pivotal role in shaping LIS education to meet contemporary needs. Pioneering universities such as Banaras Hindu University (BHU), University of Delhi, and specialized centers like the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) have contributed significantly to establishing academic legitimacy and pedagogical foundations in LIS. These institutions, along with many others across the country, offer degrees ranging from bachelor's to doctoral levels, providing students with diverse entry points into the profession. The University Grants Commission (UGC) has been instrumental in creating standardized guidelines for LIS education, ensuring consistency and academic rigor across institutions. The evolving curricula today encompass a wide range of topics, including digital libraries, open access publishing, information architecture, bibliometrics, and cybersecurity. Practical training through internships, project work, and access to virtual learning platforms further enrich the learning experience, enabling students to apply theoretical knowledge in real-world scenarios. Professional associations like the Indian Library Association (ILA) and the Indian Association of Special Libraries and Information Centres (IASLIC) have also supported the discipline through conferences, workshops, and collaborative research, enhancing the academic and professional visibility of LIS in India.

The future of LIS education in India is closely tied to the country's broader digital and knowledge-driven development strategies. National initiatives such as Digital India, e-ShodhSindhu, and the National Knowledge Network (NKN) have underscored the critical role of information professionals in facilitating access to digital knowledge resources across academic and public domains. These initiatives necessitate that LIS curricula remain dynamic and responsive to technological changes, emerging user needs, and global trends in

NOTE

knowledge dissemination. Moreover, with the increasing importance of data governance, intellectual property rights, digital preservation, and open educational resources, LIS professionals are expected to possess both domain expertise and technological proficiency. The demand for such professionals is growing not just in academic libraries, but also in corporate sectors, NGOs, government archives, and digital content management organizations. As India embraces its identity as a knowledge economy, LIS education must continue to innovate, integrating cutting-edge technologies, fostering interdisciplinary collaborations, and promoting lifelong learning to prepare future-ready information professionals capable of navigating and shaping the evolving information ecosystem.

1.4 EARLY DEVELOPMENTS IN LIS EDUCATION IN INDIA

Early Developments in Library and Information Science (LIS) Education in India began taking shape in the early 20th century, heavily influenced by Western models of librarianship and a growing awareness of the need for professional library services in the country. A pivotal moment in this development occurred in 1911, when William Alanson Borden, an American librarian with expertise in modern library practices, was invited by Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III of Baroda. Borden was tasked with transforming the existing library systems into professionally managed institutions that adhered to global standards. Under his leadership, a structured training program for librarians was launched, focusing on core aspects such as classification, cataloguing, reference services, and library administration. This initiative not only introduced scientific and organized methods to Indian librarianship but also marked the formal inception of LIS education in the country. By placing emphasis on systematic instruction and professional competencies, Borden's program laid the groundwork for the emergence of librarianship as a specialized academic and vocational field distinct from general clerical or administrative duties. His pioneering efforts demonstrated the importance of a trained library workforce in managing and facilitating access to knowledge, a concept that would gain further momentum in the years to come.

A major leap forward in LIS education came in 1937 with the efforts of Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, a mathematician-turned-librarian who is universally acknowledged as the "Father of Library Science in India." His establishment of the first full-fledged university-level LIS program at the University of Madras marked the beginning of formal academic instruction in the discipline at a higher education level. Ranganathan revolutionized library science in India through his scholarly contributions, most notably the Five Laws of Library Science, which

encapsulate the philosophical and functional ethos of librarianship. He also developed the Colon Classification System, a logical and faceted approach to organizing knowledge that offered a more flexible and scientifically grounded alternative to existing classification systems. These innovations positioned India as a thought leader in the global library science community. During this period, LIS education primarily reflected the British and American instructional models, emphasizing areas such as bibliographic control, subject indexing, and manual record-keeping. Despite these advancements, the spread of LIS programs across India was limited due to inadequate institutional support, scarcity of trained faculty, and low societal recognition of librarianship as a professional career. Nonetheless, this era laid a strong intellectual and structural foundation for the systematic growth of LIS education in independent India.

In the pre-independence era, although the number of institutions offering LIS education remained limited, the discipline began to receive greater academic legitimacy and policy attention. Efforts were made to standardize curricula and develop a more cohesive framework for training librarians, especially in urban centers with growing educational and archival needs. The growing demand for public and academic libraries in cities created a modest yet important employment market for trained professionals, which further highlighted the need for expanding LIS education. However, challenges such as fragmented infrastructure, lack of funding, and limited awareness among the general public about the value of libraries continued to hamper widespread growth. Still, by the time of India's independence in 1947, the intellectual foundation laid by early pioneers like Borden and Ranganathan had firmly established the need for professional training in librarianship. Their work inspired future generations of LIS educators, policy makers, and practitioners, ultimately influencing the post-independence development of comprehensive LIS programs across Indian universities. This early phase, marked by pioneering vision, foundational theories, and nascent institutional development, played an indispensable role in shaping the trajectory of LIS education in India and continues to be a reference point for its evolution in the digital age.

1.5 GROWTH OF LIS EDUCATION DURING THE PRE-INDEPENDENCE PERIOD

Before India's independence in 1947, LIS education remained in its formative stages, with only a few institutions offering structured training programs. The need for trained library professionals grew alongside the expansion of public, academic, and special libraries, particularly in major cities like Calcutta, Bombay, and Madras. The establishment of the Imperial Library in Calcutta (now the National

NOTE

Library of India) in 1903 was a major turning point in the professionalization of library services. The Imperial Library began offering basic training programs for library assistants and clerks, marking an early attempt at formal library science education.

The formation of the Indian Library Association (ILA) in 1933 played a significant role in advocating for the standardization of LIS education. The ILA worked towards curriculum development, faculty training, and policy recommendations for library professionals. Several universities, including Banaras Hindu University (BHU) and Aligarh Muslim University (AMU), introduced LIS programs, offering diploma and certificate courses. However, despite these advancements, the scope of LIS education remained limited, with low enrollment rates, inadequate funding, and minimal government support. By the time India gained independence, the foundation for LIS education had been laid, but it required significant restructuring and expansion to meet the growing demands of the library profession.

1.6 EXPANSION OF LIS EDUCATION POST-INDEPENDENCE

The post-independence period marked a significant expansion in Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India. With the formation of the University Grants Commission (UGC) in 1956, LIS education gained institutional recognition, leading to the establishment of diploma, bachelor's, and master's programs across Indian universities. The need for trained professionals in academic, public, and special libraries became evident as India embarked on a journey of educational and scientific development. The government initiated several library development programs, including the Radhakrishnan Commission (1948-49) and the Kothari Commission (1964-66), which emphasized the role of libraries in higher education and recommended the integration of library services into the national education policy.

During this period, leading universities such as Delhi University, Banaras Hindu University (BHU), and Aligarh Muslim University (AMU) established LIS departments, offering structured courses in library management, classification, cataloguing, and research methodologies. The Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) was founded by Dr. S.R. Ranganathan in 1962 in Bangalore under the Indian Statistical Institute (ISI), marking a significant milestone in LIS education. The Indian National Scientific Documentation Centre (INSDOC), now part of CSIR-NIScPR, also played a key role in training professionals in scientific and technical librarianship. These institutions laid the groundwork for modern LIS curricula, ensuring that library professionals were equipped with both theoretical knowledge and practical skills. The post-independence era saw a

systematic approach to LIS education, making it a recognized and structured academic discipline in India.

NOTE

1.7 INTRODUCTION OF ADVANCED LIS COURSES AND SPECIALIZATIONS

As LIS education evolved, the demand for specialized training in areas such as digital libraries, knowledge management, information retrieval, and data curation led to the introduction of advanced courses and specializations. By the 1980s and 1990s, universities began offering Master of Library and Information Science (MLIS) programs, incorporating modern subjects like information technology, database management, bibliometrics, and user studies. The growing importance of research and development (R&D) in LIS also led to the establishment of doctoral (Ph.D.) programs in LIS, with a focus on library automation, digital preservation, and bibliographic control. During this phase, professional bodies such as the Indian Library Association (ILA), the Association of Indian Universities (AIU), and the UGC played a crucial role in standardizing LIS curricula. The introduction of distance learning programs by institutions like IGNOU (Indira Gandhi National Open University) enabled working professionals to pursue LIS education through flexible learning modes. Several universities also introduced short-term certificate and diploma courses in specialized fields such as digital librarianship, archives management, and metadata standards. These advancements have helped LIS education remain relevant and adaptable in the face of rapid technological changes and the emergence of digital and virtual library environments.

1.8 ROLE OF UGC AND OTHER REGULATORY BODIES IN LIS EDUCATION

The Role of the University Grants Commission (UGC) and Other Regulatory Bodies in LIS Education in India has been fundamental to the structured growth and modernization of the discipline. The UGC, as the apex body overseeing higher education in India, has been instrumental in defining academic standards for Library and Information Science (LIS) education. One of its landmark contributions was the introduction of the Model Curriculum for LIS Education in 2001, which aimed to standardize the structure, content, and quality of LIS programs across Indian universities. This initiative brought uniformity to an otherwise fragmented educational landscape, ensuring that students across various institutions received consistent instruction in core areas such as library automation, knowledge organization, information retrieval systems, research methodologies, and bibliographic standards. By aligning the curriculum with the

NOTE

demands of the information age, the UGC addressed the growing need for librarians to possess both traditional knowledge and modern technical competencies. Additionally, the UGC has supported LIS departments through funding for faculty development programs, seminars, and research projects, further elevating the academic and professional standards of the field. UGC's involvement has also helped in incorporating interdisciplinary elements such as digital technologies, data management, and user-centered services, ensuring that LIS graduates are equipped to handle diverse roles in modern libraries, information centers, and digital repositories.

Beyond the UGC, several other regulatory and advisory bodies have significantly influenced the landscape of LIS education in India. The All India Council for Technical Education (AICTE), though primarily focused on technical education, has played a role in LIS programs offered in institutions with an emphasis on information systems and library automation. The National Assessment and Accreditation Council (NAAC) evaluates and accredits higher education institutions, including those offering LIS programs, thus indirectly influencing the quality of LIS education by promoting best practices, academic innovation, and infrastructural improvement. A significant policy-level intervention came from the National Knowledge Commission (NKC) in the mid-2000s, which emphasized the importance of modernizing libraries and improving the quality of library professionals. The NKC recommendations underscored the need for enhanced ICT training, better access to knowledge resources, and the re-skilling of existing library staff—factors that deeply impacted LIS curriculum planning. Furthermore, the National Mission on Libraries (NML), launched in 2014 by the Ministry of Culture, focused on library modernization, digitization of resources, and capacity building. Under NML, several programs were initiated for the training and professional development of LIS personnel, reinforcing the importance of continuous education and practical exposure in the field. Together, these bodies have contributed to the gradual transformation of LIS education from a discipline rooted in traditional practices to one that is adaptive, interdisciplinary, and aligned with global trends in information management.

The combined efforts of the UGC and allied regulatory institutions have resulted in a more holistic and future-ready LIS educational framework. One of the key achievements of these bodies has been the integration of ICT competencies within the LIS syllabus, making graduates more relevant in the digital information age. These developments have not only enhanced employability but have also diversified career opportunities for LIS professionals in fields such as digital curation, content management, corporate information services, and academic publishing. Moreover, by emphasizing research capacity building, UGC

and NAAC have supported the emergence of LIS as a research-intensive discipline, encouraging scholarly contributions through funded research projects, doctoral programs, and academic journals. The UGC's inclusion of LIS under the National Eligibility Test (NET) has also helped maintain quality in teaching and research by ensuring that only qualified professionals enter the academic workforce. However, challenges remain, particularly in the uneven implementation of reforms across institutions and the limited industry-academia collaboration in LIS education. There is also a growing need for better digital infrastructure, updated teaching tools, and more practical training opportunities. Nonetheless, the regulatory ecosystem led by UGC and supplemented by bodies like AICTE, NAAC, NKC, and NML has laid a strong foundation for the ongoing evolution of LIS education in India. Going forward, strategic partnerships, continuous curriculum renewal, and integration with global information systems will be essential to further enhance the relevance and impact of LIS education in an increasingly digital and knowledge-driven world.

1.9 CHALLENGES FACED IN LIS EDUCATION IN INDIA

Despite notable advancements, Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India continues to grapple with several pressing challenges that hinder its ability to fully meet contemporary information management demands. One of the most prominent issues is the lack of uniformity in course content, pedagogy, and curriculum implementation across institutions. While premier universities and autonomous institutes have modernized their programs to incorporate advanced components such as digital libraries, electronic resource management, and knowledge discovery, a significant number of colleges still adhere to outdated syllabi rooted in traditional librarianship. This inconsistency creates a disparity in the skillsets of LIS graduates, resulting in a fragmented workforce where some professionals are well-versed in modern technologies while others lack even basic exposure to current tools. Furthermore, the absence of a centralized accreditation or curriculum revision authority specific to LIS means that many programs operate in silos, unable to keep pace with global standards and best practices. Compounding this issue is the scarcity of research funding and infrastructure, which limits both faculty and student engagement in innovation, experimentation, and scholarly output. The lack of well-equipped laboratories, digital access, and functional libraries for hands-on training further diminishes the learning experience, especially in institutions located in rural or underfunded regions. Another concern is the limited industry-academia linkage, resulting in LIS graduates being inadequately prepared to meet

NOTE

professional demands. The disconnect between theoretical instruction and the practical skills required in real-world information environments undermines employability and professional mobility, particularly as employers increasingly look for candidates who are proficient in data analytics, content management systems, and international cataloguing standards.

Equally concerning is the slow pace of technological adoption and integration within LIS education in India. Although some universities have embraced online learning platforms, integrated library management systems (ILMS), and digital repositories, many still rely on chalk-and-talk methods, printed textbooks, and manual cataloguing practices. This reluctance to modernize is often due to the lack of faculty trained in cutting-edge technologies, including artificial intelligence, machine learning, digital preservation, and metadata management. The generational divide among teaching staff, where senior faculty may be less inclined or equipped to adopt new tools, further exacerbates this problem. Moreover, the absence of continuous professional development programs means that many LIS educators are unable to keep up with rapidly evolving technological landscapes. Another major challenge is the gap between academic training and market expectations. Employers now demand LIS professionals who are not only subject experts but also skilled in digital curation, database management, programming for information retrieval, and global metadata standards like BIBFRAME or MARC 21. However, many LIS graduates find themselves underprepared for such roles, leading to underemployment or the need for additional certifications. Addressing these multifaceted issues requires a strategic overhaul of LIS education in India. Immediate steps should include regular curriculum revisions in consultation with industry experts, the introduction of faculty development initiatives, enhanced collaboration with international LIS schools, and increased government and private sector investment in LIS infrastructure and research. In addition, the promotion of interdisciplinary learning, internships, and real-time projects would bridge the gap between theoretical knowledge and practical expertise. Only through such comprehensive reforms can LIS education in India equip its graduates with the tools necessary to thrive in a rapidly changing information society.

1.10 RECENT TRENDS AND DEVELOPMENTS IN LIS EDUCATION

In the digital age, Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India is undergoing a transformative shift, responding to the profound changes in how information is created, accessed, and utilized. One of the most significant recent trends is the integration of advanced digital

NOTE

technologies into the LIS curriculum. With the rapid evolution of digital libraries, cloud computing, artificial intelligence (AI), and machine learning, LIS programs are now equipping students with skills far beyond traditional cataloguing and reference services. New course components such as linked data structures, semantic web technologies, metadata standards (e.g., Dublin Core, MARC21, BIBFRAME), and information visualization are becoming standard. This shift not only improves the technical capabilities of LIS professionals but also enhances their ability to handle large-scale digital information systems and provide intelligent, user-centered services. Another critical area of focus is cybersecurity, especially in the context of digital library services where protecting digital assets and user data has become essential. These updates reflect a broader global trend where library science is being redefined as a technology-oriented discipline that addresses the challenges of information governance, digital preservation, and data ethics. Furthermore, the adoption of big data analytics, knowledge discovery tools, and digital curation frameworks has transformed LIS education into a dynamic, interdisciplinary field that closely aligns with the demands of academic research, business intelligence, and e-governance.

Equally important is the rise of online and blended learning models, which have made LIS education more inclusive and accessible, especially for working professionals and students from remote areas. Government-backed initiatives like SWAYAM (Study Webs of Active Learning for Young Aspiring Minds) and NPTEL (National Programme on Technology Enhanced Learning), along with Massive Open Online Courses (MOOCs), have broadened the scope of LIS education by offering flexible, self-paced, and high-quality content developed by top Indian universities and institutions. These platforms provide courses in digital librarianship, research methodology, e-resources management, and open access publishing, among others. This digital delivery mode allows learners to stay updated with emerging practices without being confined to traditional classroom settings. Another progressive trend is the increasing emphasis on interdisciplinary education, where LIS intersects with data science, computer applications, knowledge management, archival studies, and digital humanities. This convergence enhances the analytical, managerial, and technological competencies of LIS professionals, making them more versatile in the job market. Internships, collaborative projects, and industry-academia partnerships have also become more prominent in LIS programs, offering students practical exposure to real-world information environments. These trends collectively indicate a robust reimagining of LIS education in India—one that is attuned to the challenges of the knowledge society and capable of producing skilled professionals who can navigate both the physical and digital realms of information. As LIS

NOTE

education continues to evolve, its role as a critical enabler of informed citizenship, academic excellence, and institutional knowledge management becomes increasingly significant.

Activity 1.1

Activity Title: Create a Timeline of LIS Education in India

Objective:

To help students understand the historical development and major milestones in Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India.

Materials Required:

- A4 sheet or notebook
- Pen/Pencil
- Internet or textbook (optional)

Procedure:

1. Read the topics on the evolution of LIS education in India.
2. Identify at least **6–8 major milestones** (e.g., early developments, pre-independence growth, post-independence expansion, introduction of specializations, UGC's role, recent trends).
3. Arrange these milestones in chronological order and draw a simple timeline.
4. Write one sentence explaining the significance of each milestone.

Outcome:

Students will develop a clear understanding of the evolution, growth, and current trends of Library and Information Science education in India while improving their ability to organize historical information chronologically.

1.11 FUTURE OF LIS EDUCATION IN INDIA

The future of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India will be shaped by a confluence of technological advancements, educational reforms, and the escalating demand for skilled information professionals across diverse sectors. As we transition into an era of smart libraries, AI-driven knowledge systems, and immersive digital archives, the LIS curriculum must evolve to include competencies that go beyond traditional librarianship. Emerging technologies such as artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning, blockchain, and data analytics are rapidly being adopted in knowledge systems worldwide, and Indian LIS programs must embrace these changes to remain relevant. The future LIS professional will need to be proficient not only in cataloguing and classification but also in digital archiving, data visualization, programming basics, and information architecture.

NOTE

Moreover, the integration of LIS with disciplines like data science, cloud computing, digital humanities, and cyberlaw will make LIS a truly interdisciplinary field, offering broader career paths in research centers, IT firms, digital content management industries, academic institutions, and global knowledge organizations. This multidisciplinary approach will attract more students to LIS education, transforming it from a niche domain to a strategic profession at the core of the information economy.

To achieve this forward-looking vision, several strategic steps are necessary. Firstly, international collaborations with globally recognized LIS institutions will enable knowledge exchange, joint research initiatives, and exposure to best practices, preparing Indian LIS graduates for global roles. Secondly, faculty development programs, sponsored by both government and private sectors, must be scaled up to train educators in emerging technologies and pedagogies. This will bridge the current expertise gap and ensure that the curriculum delivery matches industry standards. The National Education Policy (NEP) 2020 provides a favorable framework by advocating for interdisciplinary learning, flexible course structures, and a focus on skill development—elements that perfectly align with the requirements of a modern LIS program. Institutions must leverage this policy to redesign LIS education as a hub of innovation, critical thinking, and practical training. Future LIS programs should emphasize experiential learning through internships, live projects, and digital labs, ensuring that graduates are workplace-ready. Additionally, policy support and increased funding for digital infrastructure, research, and curriculum innovation will be crucial in scaling LIS education nationally. By fostering an ecosystem of innovation, adaptability, and global engagement, LIS education in India can not only remain relevant but also lead the way in reimagining the role of information professionals in the 21st century.

☑ Check Your Progress 1.1

1. What were the key contributions of Dr. S.R. Ranganathan to LIS education in India?

.....

2. How did LIS education in India evolve in the post-independence period?

.....

NOTE

3. What are the main challenges faced by LIS education in India today?

.....

1.12 SUMMARY

Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India has undergone a remarkable transformation, evolving from a traditional focus on cataloguing and book management to encompassing modern digital information systems, artificial intelligence, and knowledge organization frameworks. The discipline formally began in 1911 when William Alanson Borden introduced structured training in Baroda, laying the foundation for professional LIS education. This foundation was revolutionized by Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, whose Five Laws of Library Science and Colon Classification System became pillars of the field. During the pre-independence era, LIS education developed slowly, with few institutions and limited government support. Milestones such as the formation of the Indian Library Association (ILA) in 1933 and the establishment of the Imperial Library (now National Library of India) in 1903 were instrumental in its professionalization. Post-independence, the establishment of the University Grants Commission (UGC) in 1956 catalyzed the expansion of LIS programs through curriculum standardization and funding. Leading universities like Delhi University, BHU, and AMU began offering diplomas, bachelor's, and master's degrees, while institutions like the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) and INSDOC emphasized research and technical training. Despite progress, challenges such as outdated syllabi, lack of trained faculty, inadequate research funding, and insufficient integration of modern technologies remain. Regulatory bodies like UGC, AICTE, NAAC, and the National Knowledge Commission have tried to address these gaps through reforms and quality benchmarks. With growing emphasis on digital libraries, AI, and interdisciplinary knowledge, the LIS curriculum is evolving, but its future hinges on ongoing modernization, international collaborations, policy support, and the creation of a skilled workforce equipped for both traditional and emerging information environments.

1.13 GLOSSARY

- **Library and Information Science (LIS):** An academic discipline focused on managing, organizing, and disseminating information through library systems and digital platforms.

NOTE

- **Knowledge Organization:** The process of structuring, classifying, and indexing information to facilitate retrieval and accessibility.
- **Cataloguing:** A systematic method of describing and organizing library materials for easy access and retrieval.
- **Classification:** The technique of organizing books and information resources based on subject categories using classification schemes like the Dewey Decimal System and Colon Classification.
- **Five Laws of Library Science:** Principles proposed by Dr. S.R. Ranganathan to guide library management and services.
- **Digital Library:** An electronic repository of books, journals, and multimedia content that provides remote access to information.
- **Artificial Intelligence (AI) in Libraries:** The use of AI-based tools for automated cataloguing, search optimization, and virtual reference services.
- **Metadata:** Structured data that describes information resources, facilitating efficient retrieval and management.
- **BIBFRAME:** A bibliographic framework for libraries that replaces the MARC (Machine-Readable Cataloging) format with a web-compatible structure.
- **University Grants Commission (UGC):** The statutory body responsible for coordinating and maintaining higher education standards in India.
- **Indian Library Association (ILA):** A professional body advocating for the development and standardization of LIS education in India.
- **Ranganathan's Colon Classification System:** A system for organizing library materials using a faceted approach, developed by Dr. S.R. Ranganathan.
- **Information Retrieval System:** A digital tool or database designed to search and retrieve relevant information based on user queries.
- **Cybersecurity in Libraries:** Measures taken to protect digital library systems and user data from cyber threats.
- **Digital India Initiative:** A government initiative aimed at enhancing digital infrastructure and promoting e-governance, including the digitization of library resources.

NOTE**1.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE****Check Your Progress 1.1**

1. Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, known as the "Father of Library Science in India," made several groundbreaking contributions to LIS education. He introduced the Five Laws of Library Science, which emphasized accessibility, growth, and efficient library management. His Colon Classification System revolutionized knowledge organization by introducing a faceted classification approach. Ranganathan played a key role in establishing the first university-level LIS course at the University of Madras in 1937 and later founded the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) in 1962. His work influenced the standardization of LIS education and training programs across India, ensuring a scientific and systematic approach to librarianship. His contributions laid the foundation for modern LIS curricula and professionalization of the field.
2. After India's independence, LIS education expanded significantly with the establishment of the University Grants Commission (UGC) in 1956, which standardized library science curricula and introduced diploma, bachelor's, and master's programs. Institutions like Delhi University, Banaras Hindu University (BHU), and Aligarh Muslim University (AMU) set up LIS departments. Dr. S.R. Ranganathan founded the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) in 1962, and INSDOC provided specialized training in scientific documentation. Advanced courses in digital librarianship, knowledge management, and artificial intelligence were gradually introduced. The rise of online education, government initiatives like Digital India, and collaborations with global institutions have further modernized LIS education, preparing professionals for digital and research-oriented roles.
3. Despite its growth, LIS education in India faces several challenges, including inconsistencies in curricula across universities, outdated teaching methods, and a lack of skilled faculty in emerging technologies. Funding constraints limit research and infrastructure development, affecting the adoption of modern digital library tools. Additionally, the gap between academic training and industry expectations remains a concern, as employers demand professionals with expertise in artificial intelligence, big data, and digital curation. Limited integration of LIS with interdisciplinary fields also hampers career prospects for graduates. Addressing these issues requires curriculum updates, increased investment in research, faculty training programs, and international collaborations to align LIS education with global standards.

1.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER**NOTE**

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3671	

1.16 REFERENCES

- Bansal, Alka. Library and Information Science Education in India: Trends and Developments. EssEss Publications, 2019.
- Borden, William Alanson. The Library Movement in India: Early Developments in LIS Education. Government of India Press, 1911.
- Ghosh, Maitrayee. "The Changing Landscape of LIS Education in India: Challenges and Future Prospects." Library Philosophy and Practice, vol. 2012, 2012, pp. 1-12.
- Gupta, Dinesh K. LIS Education in India: A Historical Perspective. Concept Publishing Company, 2017.
- IGNOU. Library and Information Science Course Materials. Indira Gandhi National Open University, 2020.
- Indian Library Association. Standards and Guidelines for LIS Education in India. Indian Library Association, 2015.
- Joshi, Monoj. "Role of ICT in Modern LIS Education." International Journal of Library and Information Science Studies, vol. 5, no. 2, 2018, pp. 45-58.
- Kawatra, P.S. Textbook of Library and Information Science. EssEss Publications, 2016.
- Kumar, Krishan. Library Manual: A Guide to LIS Education in India. Vikas Publishing, 2021.
- Ranganathan, S.R. The Five Laws of Library Science. Madras Library Association, 1931.
- Raza, M. A. and Singh, Surya Nath. Library and Information Science Education in India: Issues and Trends. Kanishka Publishers, 2014.
- Singh, Jagtar. Digital Libraries and LIS Education in India: A Critical Analysis. Rawat Publications, 2018.
- University Grants Commission. Model Curriculum for Library and Information Science Education in India. UGC, 2001.

NOTE

- Varalakshmi, R. S. R. "Professional Development and LIS Education in India." Annals of Library and Information Studies, vol. 60, no. 4, 2013, pp. 356-365.

1.17 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

- 1. Who is considered the "Father of Library Science in India"?**
 - a) William Alanson Borden
 - b) Dr. S.R. Ranganathan
 - c) Melvil Dewey
 - d) Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III
- 2. Which commission emphasized the integration of library services into India's national education policy?**
 - a) Radhakrishnan Commission (1948-49)
 - b) Kothari Commission (1964-66)
 - c) National Knowledge Commission (2005)
 - d) Macaulay Commission (1835)
- 3. What was the primary focus of LIS education in India during the early 20th century?**
 - a) Digital Library Management
 - b) Artificial Intelligence in LIS
 - c) Manual Cataloguing and Classification
 - d) Data Science Integration
- 4. Which institution played a crucial role in training professionals in scientific and technical librarianship in India?**
 - a) Indira Gandhi National Open University (IGNOU)
 - b) Indian National Scientific Documentation Centre (INSDOC)
 - c) Banaras Hindu University (BHU)
 - d) Indian Library Association (ILA)
- 5. What major technological advancement significantly influenced LIS education in the 21st century?**
 - a) The rise of AI and Big Data Analytics
 - b) Introduction of Typewriters in Libraries

- c) The Expansion of Imperial Library in 1903
- d) Manual Classification Systems

NOTE

Answer with Explanations:

1. **b)** Dr. S.R. Ranganathan - Dr. S.R. Ranganathan is widely recognized for his contributions to library science in India, including the Five Laws of Library Science and the Colon Classification System.
2. **b)** Kothari Commission (1964-66) - The Kothari Commission highlighted the importance of libraries in higher education and recommended their integration into the educational framework.
3. **c)** Manual Cataloguing and Classification - Early LIS education in India primarily focused on traditional skills such as cataloguing, classification, reference services, and collection management.
4. **b)** Indian National Scientific Documentation Centre (INSDOC) - INSDOC, now part of CSIR-NIScPR, specialized in training professionals in scientific and technical librarianship.
5. **a)** The rise of AI and Big Data Analytics - AI, big data, and digital curation have transformed LIS education by integrating modern technology into library management and information retrieval.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. What role did William Alanson Borden play in the early development of LIS education in India?
2. How did the establishment of the Indian Library Association (ILA) contribute to LIS education?
3. What were the key recommendations of the Kothari Commission regarding libraries and LIS education?
4. How has digital transformation influenced the modern LIS curriculum in India?

PART- 2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the expansion of LIS education in India post-independence. How did institutions like UGC, DRTC, and INSDOC contribute to this growth?
2. Explain the impact of technological advancements on LIS education in India. How have digital libraries, AI, and big data analytics reshaped LIS curricula?

NOTE

3. Analyze the role of regulatory bodies such as UGC, AICTE, and NAAC in standardizing and improving LIS education in India.

PART- 3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Evaluate the challenges faced by LIS education in India and suggest possible solutions to bridge the gap between traditional training and modern technological requirements.
2. What are the recent trends in LIS education, and how is India preparing LIS professionals for the future of knowledge management?
3. What challenges does LIS education in India face in adopting new technologies?

UNIT 2

LIBRARY AND INFORMATION POLICY AT THE NATIONAL LEVEL

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 2.1 Introduction**
- 2.2 Objective**
- 2.3 Library and Information Policy at the National Level**
- 2.4 Evolution of Library and Information Policy in India**
- 2.5 Key Objectives of a National Library and Information Policy**
- 2.6 Role of Government in Library and Information Policy Formulation**
- 2.7 National Mission on Libraries (NML) and Its Impact**
- 2.8 Challenges in Implementing a National Library Policy**
- 2.9 Role of Technology in Modern Library Policy**
- 2.10 Policy Recommendations for Strengthening the Library System**
- 2.11 Future Directions for Library and Information Policy in India**
- 2.12 Conclusion**
- 2.13 Summary**
- 2.14 Glossary**
- 2.15 Answers to check your progress**
- 2.16 Suggested readings - OER**
- 2.17 Reference**
- 2.18 Exercise**

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Library and Information Policy at the national level plays a crucial role in shaping the development, management, and accessibility of library and information services across a country. In India, library policies have been shaped by various governmental initiatives, professional associations, and international influences. The idea of a national library policy emerged in the early post-independence era when the government recognized the need for structured and well-funded library systems to support education, research, and literacy. Several committees and commissions, such as the Sinha Committee (1957) and the National

NOTE

Knowledge Commission (2005), have proposed recommendations for improving library services. Despite these efforts, India still lacks a comprehensive National Library Policy, unlike many developed nations. However, various policies and programs, such as the National Mission on Libraries (NML) launched in 2014, have been instrumental in modernizing library services and ensuring equitable access to information resources. The role of library policy extends beyond the physical establishment of libraries to include aspects such as digitization, open access, copyright laws, and knowledge dissemination. The emergence of digital libraries, e-governance initiatives, and information and communication technology (ICT) developments have prompted policymakers to reconsider traditional library policies. Institutions like the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) have played a significant role in funding and supporting public libraries in India. The implementation of ICT-based policies, such as the Digital India initiative, has further strengthened the country's information infrastructure by integrating technology into libraries. However, challenges remain in terms of funding, skilled human resources, and policy execution at the grassroots level. A well-defined and effectively implemented national library and information policy is crucial for promoting knowledge accessibility, supporting academic research, and bridging the digital divide in India.

2.1 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To analyse the significance of library and information policy at the national level.
- To analyze historical and contemporary efforts toward a National Library Policy in India.
- To examine government initiatives such as the National Mission on Libraries (NML).
- To explore the role of digital transformation in shaping library policies.
- To assess the challenges and future directions of library policy implementation.

2.3 LIBRARY AND INFORMATION POLICY AT THE NATIONAL LEVEL

A National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) is essential for laying down a strategic and unified roadmap for the development and governance of library and information services throughout a country. In the Indian context, libraries are integral to the country's knowledge infrastructure, supporting formal education, informal learning,

NOTE

scholarly research, and public awareness. Since India's independence, there has been an increasing acknowledgment of the importance of libraries as democratizing institutions that can bridge socio-economic and knowledge divides. Despite this recognition, India has yet to establish and fully implement a National Library and Information Policy, although several committees, including the Ranganathan Committee (1958) and subsequent expert panels, have persistently advocated for one. The absence of such a policy has led to significant disparities in the development and functioning of libraries, particularly with regard to infrastructure, staff training, digital capabilities, and equitable access to resources. This unevenness is most visible between urban and rural library systems, where rural and semi-urban libraries often suffer from neglect, poor funding, and lack of modern services.

A robust national policy would be instrumental in ensuring coordination among various types of libraries—public, academic, special, and digital—while laying out guidelines for library establishment, maintenance, digitization, funding mechanisms, and human resource development. The framework should also define minimum standards for library services and ensure legal and financial support for continuous modernization. Several bodies have partially addressed these needs through their independent roles. The National Mission on Libraries (NML), launched in 2014 under the Ministry of Culture, aimed to modernize library systems and promote equitable access to information. It emphasized capacity-building, infrastructure enhancement, and the digitization of rare and culturally significant documents. The Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), established in 1972, has been a major funding body for public libraries, particularly focusing on rural areas and socially disadvantaged communities. Similarly, the University Grants Commission (UGC) has played a pivotal role in shaping academic library services through policy directions, funding, and curricular integration for Library and Information Science (LIS) programs. Yet, despite these fragmented efforts, the lack of an overarching NLIP means that these initiatives often operate in silos, leading to duplication of efforts, gaps in service delivery, and missed opportunities for national integration.

Furthermore, the emergence of digital technologies, artificial intelligence, and open-access repositories has altered the landscape of information access and management, necessitating a reimagining of library policies at the national level. A forward-looking NLIP must not only address physical infrastructure and traditional library roles but also set standards for digital literacy, data privacy, copyright issues, metadata standards, and long-term digital preservation. It should also consider the evolving role of libraries as community knowledge centers that support e-governance, skill development, and social inclusion. In light of the National Education Policy (NEP) 2020, which calls for a

NOTE

flexible and multidisciplinary educational structure, the role of libraries as facilitators of integrated and lifelong learning becomes more pronounced. Therefore, the future of library services in India depends on the enactment of a comprehensive NLIP that aligns with both national development goals and international best practices. Through multi-stakeholder collaboration involving government ministries, academic institutions, library associations, private players, and civil society, India can establish a dynamic and inclusive policy framework that redefines the role of libraries in the 21st-century information society.

2.4 EVOLUTION OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION POLICY IN INDIA

The evolution of library and information policy in India reflects the country's journey from a colonial legacy of elitist information access to an aspirational vision of democratized knowledge for all. During the British colonial period, libraries were mainly established to serve the needs of administrators and academic elites, with minimal focus on public access or literacy. The establishment of the Imperial Library in Calcutta (now the National Library of India) in 1903 was a landmark event, signifying the beginning of a centralized library tradition. However, there was no coordinated policy or framework to guide the development, integration, or standardization of libraries across the country. The real momentum toward a national library system came post-independence, especially with the formation of the Advisory Committee for Libraries in 1957 under the chairmanship of K.P. Sinha. This committee emphasized the need for a systematic library network across India and was the first step toward conceptualizing a National Library and Information Policy. Its recommendations laid the groundwork for envisioning libraries as instruments of socio-economic development and lifelong learning.

As India transitioned into a democratic republic, the importance of libraries in nation-building became increasingly apparent. Successive Five-Year Plans of the Government of India, particularly the Third and Fourth Plans, recognized the role of libraries in promoting education, literacy, and social equity. These plans emphasized the expansion of public libraries, especially in rural and underserved areas, to bridge the information divide. In 1986, the Draft National Policy on Library and Information Systems (NAPLIS) was developed with the aim of creating a unified structure for library services across different sectors. The policy envisioned a network of well-equipped public, academic, and special libraries coordinated by state and national level institutions. A revised draft of NAPLIS was released in 1992 to address emerging challenges, including the incorporation of technology in library systems and the

NOTE

training of library personnel. Unfortunately, both drafts remained unimplemented due to bureaucratic inertia, lack of political will, and budgetary constraints. Despite these setbacks, institutions such as the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) continued to support library development projects, especially for the socially disadvantaged. Their work included funding library buildings, collections, and services in rural and semi-urban areas.

In the 21st century, the focus of library policy in India has increasingly shifted toward digital access, technological modernization, and integration with global information networks. Recognizing the transformative role of information in the knowledge economy, the National Knowledge Commission (2005–2009) emphasized revamping the library system as a critical part of educational and research infrastructure. In response, the National Mission on Libraries (NML) was launched in 2014 under the Ministry of Culture. It aimed to modernize existing libraries, establish a National Virtual Library of India, and create model libraries across states. These initiatives represented a significant step forward in translating policy recommendations into action, particularly through digitization, capacity building, and ICT integration. However, the absence of a legally binding, centrally coordinated National Library and Information Policy has continued to limit the sustainability and scalability of such programs. As digital technology rapidly transforms the landscape of information access and dissemination, India needs a dynamic and inclusive library policy framework. Such a policy must reflect the diversity of user needs, support multilingual content, enable open access to research, and foster innovation in knowledge services. Moving forward, the evolution of library and information policy in India will depend on political commitment, inter-agency collaboration, and active involvement from stakeholders across academia, government, and civil society.

2.5 KEY OBJECTIVES OF A NATIONAL LIBRARY AND INFORMATION POLICY

A National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) must be designed with clear and well-defined objectives to cater to the diverse needs of users, including students, researchers, professionals, and the general public.

- 1. Ensuring Universal and Equitable Access to Information:** One of the primary goals of NLIP is to ensure that all citizens, including those in marginalized and rural communities, have equal access to information. This involves the development of a robust and inclusive library infrastructure, integrating public, academic, special, and digital libraries to serve various educational and research needs.

NOTE

- 2. Technological Integration and Digital Access:** With the rapid advancement of technology, the policy must focus on integrating digital tools, online databases, and automated library systems to enhance access. The promotion of e-libraries, digital archives, and cloud-based information repositories is essential for modernizing library services.
- 3. Capacity Building and Skill Development:** The NLIP should emphasize training and professional development for library staff, ensuring that they are equipped with modern cataloging techniques, metadata management, AI-based information retrieval, and open-access initiatives.
- 4. Preservation of Intellectual and Cultural Heritage:** A structured national policy should facilitate the digitization and preservation of rare manuscripts, archival documents, and indigenous knowledge systems, ensuring their long-term accessibility.
- 5. Intellectual Property Rights and Open Access:** A well-formulated NLIP must establish a balance between protecting intellectual property rights (IPR) and promoting open-access resources, ensuring that knowledge remains accessible while respecting copyright laws.

By addressing these core objectives, the NLIP can transform library services in India, making them more inclusive, technology-driven, and aligned with the needs of a knowledge-based society.

2.6 ROLE OF GOVERNMENT IN LIBRARY AND INFORMATION POLICY FORMULATION

The Government of India plays a pivotal role in shaping library and information policies through various ministries, agencies, and commissions. The Ministry of Culture oversees national libraries, while the Ministry of Education is responsible for the development of academic libraries. Key institutions such as the University Grants Commission (UGC), All India Council for Technical Education (AICTE), and the National Library of India define policy guidelines for academic and research libraries. Several government initiatives have aimed at modernizing library services in India:

- 1. National Knowledge Commission (NKC) (2005-2009):** The NKC played a significant role in recommending policy reforms for the modernization of libraries and the promotion of digital resources. It emphasized strengthening library networks and enhancing digital access to knowledge.
- 2. Digital India Initiative (2015):** This initiative has contributed to bridging the digital divide by providing online access to research

databases, digital learning platforms, and open-access educational resources.

- 3. e-Library and National Digital Library (NDL):** The National Digital Library of India (NDLI) aims to create a comprehensive online repository of academic and research resources, ensuring nationwide accessibility.
- 4. Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF):** Established to promote public library development, the RRRLF provides financial assistance to libraries, encourages rural library networks, and supports reading programs.

Despite these initiatives, the lack of a legally binding framework has resulted in unequal library development across different states. Many public libraries suffer from inconsistent funding, outdated infrastructure, and a lack of trained professionals. A well-defined National Library and Information Policy is necessary to streamline funding, standardize library services, and promote equitable access to information across urban and rural areas alike. By implementing a comprehensive national policy, the Indian government can ensure that libraries evolve to meet the demands of the digital age, making knowledge more accessible, efficient, and technologically integrated.

2.7 NATIONAL MISSION ON LIBRARIES (NML) AND ITS IMPACT

The National Mission on Libraries (NML) was launched in 2014 with the objective of modernizing and strengthening library services across India. It aimed to bridge the information gap by integrating technological advancements into the library system, ensuring better access to knowledge resources for all citizens. The mission was designed to improve public library services, enhance digital resources, provide training for library professionals, and ensure accessibility for marginalized communities.

One of the key initiatives under NML was the National Virtual Library of India (NVLI), which sought to create a digital platform providing seamless access to a vast collection of books, research papers, and archival materials. This initiative aimed to democratize knowledge by making educational resources freely available online. Additionally, NML emphasized upgrading public libraries, particularly in rural areas, by improving infrastructure, acquiring new books, and integrating digital technology into traditional library services. Another critical aspect of NML was the capacity-building program for library professionals, equipping them with skills in digital resource management, metadata creation, and online cataloging. By conducting workshops and training

NOTE

NOTE

programs, the initiative aimed to align Indian libraries with international best practices.

Despite its ambitious goals, NML faced several challenges, including inconsistent funding, slow implementation, and bureaucratic inefficiencies. Many public libraries, particularly in rural areas, still lack digital infrastructure and skilled personnel to manage modern library services. Moreover, the limited outreach of NML has resulted in uneven development across different regions.

To maximize its impact, NML must be integrated with national educational policies such as the National Education Policy (NEP) 2020 to promote lifelong learning and digital literacy. Strengthening partnerships between government agencies, universities, and the private sector can also enhance the effectiveness of NML initiatives. Expanding its funding and making library digitization a priority will ensure that NML continues to play a transformative role in India's knowledge ecosystem.

2.8 CHALLENGES IN IMPLEMENTING A NATIONAL LIBRARY POLICY

The implementation of a National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) in India has faced multiple challenges, primarily due to the absence of a legally binding framework that mandates library development and funding. Unlike many developed nations with established library legislation, India lacks a uniform law ensuring the structured development of libraries across states. This has led to inconsistencies in library infrastructure, with well-equipped facilities in urban areas while rural and semi-urban regions struggle with outdated collections, poor maintenance, and lack of technology. Financial constraints pose another major obstacle. Library funding in India is often inconsistent and insufficient, with many public libraries receiving minimal support from state governments. The absence of a centralized budget allocation mechanism has resulted in disparities, with some libraries flourishing under university or private sponsorship while others remain neglected.

Another significant challenge is the lack of coordination among various government agencies responsible for library development. Ministries such as the Ministry of Culture, Ministry of Education, University Grants Commission (UGC), and Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) all have overlapping functions, leading to inefficiencies and delays in policy implementation. This fragmentation has hindered the creation of a nationally integrated library network that ensures seamless resource sharing. Additionally, the slow pace of digitization and inadequate training for library professionals have further complicated the implementation of a national policy. Many

NOTE

libraries lack digital infrastructure, and there is a shortage of skilled personnel to manage digital repositories and electronic resources. Issues related to copyright laws, intellectual property rights (IPR), and digital preservation also remain unresolved, limiting the effectiveness of modern library services.

To overcome these challenges, a legally mandated national policy is necessary, ensuring structured funding, improved coordination among government bodies, and standardized digital access across libraries. Greater investment in technology-driven initiatives and capacity-building programs for librarians will be crucial for addressing the current gaps in India's library system.

2.9 ROLE OF TECHNOLOGY IN MODERN LIBRARY POLICY

Technology has become an integral PART-of modern library policy, revolutionizing access to information and improving library services. The advent of digital libraries, artificial intelligence (AI), big data analytics, and cloud computing has transformed the way libraries collect, store, and disseminate knowledge. These advancements have made it possible to provide users with personalized search experiences, remote access to resources, and enhanced cataloging systems.

One of the most significant technological advancements in Indian library policy is the National Digital Library of India (NDLI), which provides access to millions of academic resources in multiple languages. Similarly, the Digital India Programme has played a vital role in promoting the digitization of government documents, research papers, and educational materials, ensuring greater accessibility for students, researchers, and the general public. However, the successful integration of technology into libraries depends on multiple factors, including digital literacy, infrastructure, and cybersecurity measures. While urban libraries have benefited from technological upgrades, many rural libraries still lack proper internet connectivity and digital tools, limiting their ability to provide online services. Additionally, concerns regarding data privacy, intellectual property rights, and the security of digital content require well-defined legal frameworks to protect both users and content providers.

To maximize the role of technology in library policy, the government must focus on:

- Expanding broadband and Wi-Fi access in rural libraries
- Training librarians in digital skills such as metadata management, AI-based cataloging, and e-resource management

NOTE

- Developing cybersecurity guidelines to protect digital library content
- Encouraging open-access platforms while safeguarding intellectual property rights

By incorporating these strategies, India can build a robust and future-ready library system that harnesses the power of technology to ensure inclusive access to information.

Activity 2.1

Activity Title: Exploring India's Library Policies

Objective:

To identify the objectives of library and information policies at the national level.

Materials Required:

- Textbook/SLM
- Notebook
- Pen

Procedure:

1. Read the section on national library and information policy.
2. Identify any three objectives of the policy.
3. Write one benefit of each objective in your notebook.

Outcome:

The learner understands the importance and objectives of national library policies.

2.10 POLICY RECOMMENDATIONS FOR STRENGTHENING THE LIBRARY SYSTEM

To establish a well-structured National Library and Information Policy (NLIP), several key recommendations must be considered:

- 1. Enact Library Legislation:** A legally binding national policy should be introduced to ensure uniform library development, funding, and administration across states.
- 2. Develop a National Library Network:** Public, academic, and special libraries should be integrated under a single digital framework, facilitating resource sharing and accessibility.
- 3. Increase Financial Support:** Adequate funding should be allocated for modernizing libraries, digitizing collections, and training library

NOTE

professionals. Both government and public-private partnerships (PPP) should be encouraged to invest in library infrastructure.

4. Enhance Capacity Building: Librarians should be trained in AI-driven cataloging, digital resource management, and metadata creation to improve library services.

5. Promote Open Access and IPR Protection: Policies should encourage open-access research platforms while ensuring copyright laws protect the rights of content creators.

Implementing these recommendations can strengthen India's library system, making it more inclusive, technologically advanced, and globally competitive.

2.11 FUTURE DIRECTIONS FOR LIBRARY AND INFORMATION POLICY IN INDIA

The future directions for library and information policy in India must be envisioned through the lens of technological evolution, inclusive access, and global integration. With disruptive innovations such as artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), blockchain, and virtual reality (VR) becoming integral to modern knowledge systems, Indian libraries must rapidly embrace these tools to stay relevant. Automated cataloging, AI-powered information retrieval, and personalized recommendation systems can drastically improve user experience and operational efficiency. Policies must prioritize the integration of these technologies into library services, alongside the development of robust digital infrastructures. Importantly, such transformation should not remain limited to urban academic and research institutions but must extend to grassroots levels. A major policy direction must focus on bridging the information divide between urban and rural populations by establishing community libraries, digital learning kiosks, mobile libraries, and public Wi-Fi-enabled knowledge centers in remote regions. These models will not only democratize access to information but also enhance digital literacy, contributing to national educational goals and social equity. Additionally, leveraging platforms like the National Digital Library of India (NDLI) and Digital India initiatives can amplify the reach and impact of library services, especially when aligned with future-ready policy frameworks.

Equally critical is the need for India's library policies to adopt a sustainable and globally harmonized approach. Future policies must actively promote green libraries by encouraging the construction of eco-friendly library buildings equipped with energy-efficient technologies, solar power systems, and climate-resilient designs. Digital preservation

NOTE

must be prioritized through the use of sustainable data storage and conservation technologies that reduce environmental impact while ensuring long-term access to cultural and academic heritage. Aligning with international best practices and standards will be vital—thus, collaborations with bodies such as the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), UNESCO, and international academic consortia must be institutionalized within policy blueprints. Further, the policy should mandate regular training and upskilling of library professionals to handle emerging digital tools, metadata management, cybersecurity protocols, and user behavior analytics. A future-ready library and information policy in India should also adopt a user-centric model that values open access, inclusivity, multilingual content availability, and community engagement. Embedding these values within a flexible and regularly updated policy framework will empower Indian libraries to function as active knowledge partners in education, research, innovation, and national development. In this way, the country can transform its vast and diverse network of libraries into dynamic, technology-driven, and socially responsive knowledge ecosystems of the 21st century.

2.12 CONCLUSION

A well-defined National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) is fundamental to fostering a knowledge-driven society by ensuring universal access to information, promoting innovation, and strengthening India's educational infrastructure. Libraries serve as crucial centers for learning, research, and cultural preservation, yet their development has been hindered by the absence of a comprehensive national policy that mandates their establishment, funding, and modernization. Various initiatives, such as the National Mission on Libraries (NML), Digital India, and the National Digital Library of India (NDLI), have made significant contributions toward enhancing library infrastructure and digital access. However, these initiatives lack the legal backing required to create a standardized and sustainable library system. Additionally, funding constraints continue to pose a challenge, with financial resources unevenly distributed across urban and rural libraries, leading to disparities in access to quality library services. The lack of coordination among various governing bodies, such as the Ministry of Culture, Ministry of Education, University Grants Commission (UGC), and Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), further complicates the policy implementation process, resulting in inefficiencies and slow progress in library development. Another key challenge lies in the technological barriers that hinder the full-scale digitization of libraries. While digital transformation has significantly improved access to resources, many public and academic libraries still struggle with inadequate digital

NOTE

infrastructure, limited technological expertise among library professionals, and concerns related to cybersecurity and copyright management. Addressing these issues requires a well-structured NLIP that integrates library legislation, sustainable financial models, digital literacy initiatives, and enhanced collaboration between the government, private sector, and global library networks. By strengthening the legal framework, providing consistent financial support, and leveraging technology for efficient knowledge dissemination, India can build a more resilient and equitable library ecosystem that caters to the needs of all users.

The future of library policies in India should focus on inclusivity, emerging technologies, and global collaboration to build a modern and dynamic library network that supports education, research, and lifelong learning. Libraries must evolve beyond their traditional roles and embrace digital transformation to meet the changing needs of users in an increasingly technology-driven world. An effective NLIP should prioritize the adoption of artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), and data analytics to enhance cataloging, indexing, and personalized information retrieval, making libraries more efficient and user-friendly.

Furthermore, expanding open-access digital resources, cloud-based library systems, and virtual reference services will help democratize knowledge access for students, researchers, and the general public. Special emphasis should be placed on bridging the digital divide between urban and rural communities by promoting mobile libraries, community-based digital literacy programs, and free public Wi-Fi access in libraries. Integrating Indian libraries with global knowledge networks, such as the International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA), UNESCO, and the World Digital Library, will further enhance research opportunities and resource-sharing on an international scale. Sustainability should also be a core focus of future policies, with an emphasis on green libraries, eco-friendly infrastructure, and responsible digital resource management to support environmentally conscious knowledge preservation. By fostering a collaborative, technology-driven, and inclusive library system, India can ensure that libraries continue to serve as key enablers of education, research, and social development. An effective and forward-looking national policy will not only empower individuals with knowledge and digital skills but also contribute to the nation's intellectual and economic progress, positioning India as a global leader in information access and management.

NOTE**☑ Check Your Progress 2.1**

1. Why is a National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) essential for India?

.....

.....

.....

2. What role does technology play in modern library policy implementation?

.....

.....

.....

3. What are the key challenges in implementing a National Library Policy in India?

.....

.....

.....

2.13 SUMMARY

A National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) provides a critical framework for the growth, development, and modernization of library services, ensuring equitable access to knowledge across a country. In India, libraries are pivotal in supporting education, research, and digital literacy, making the creation of a structured national policy imperative. Despite various expert committees and recommendations, India has yet to adopt a comprehensive NLIP, resulting in disparities in library funding, infrastructure, and access, particularly in rural areas. Organizations like the National Mission on Libraries (NML) and the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) have made strides in promoting digital libraries and strengthening the library network, but challenges such as insufficient financial support, outdated infrastructure, and limited technological adoption persist. The absence of a binding framework has left many initiatives unsustainable, and library development has remained uneven across the country. The Government of India, through entities like the Ministry of Culture, Ministry of Education, and the University Grants Commission (UGC), has been involved in policy-making, yet inconsistencies in policy implementation continue. The 1986 draft of the National Policy on Library and Information Systems (NAPLIS), revised in 1992 but never

fully enacted, reflects these ongoing gaps. Future policies must focus on digital transformation, training, copyright regulations, and the preservation of India's intellectual heritage. Incorporating AI-driven services, blockchain technologies, and mobile libraries for rural regions will modernize the library ecosystem, ensuring accessibility, sustainability, and inclusivity for generations to come.

NOTE

2.14 GLOSSARY

- **National Library and Information Policy (NLIP):** A policy framework that governs the development and modernization of libraries at the national level.
- **Digital Transformation:** The integration of digital technologies, such as AI and online databases, into library services.
- **National Mission on Libraries (NML):** A government initiative aimed at improving public libraries and digital resources in India.
- **National Virtual Library of India (NVLI):** An online platform designed to provide access to digital resources across Indian libraries.
- **Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF):** A central agency responsible for library development and funding in India.
- **University Grants Commission (UGC):** A statutory body that oversees higher education and academic libraries in India.
- **Intellectual Property Rights (IPR):** Legal protections for creators of literary, artistic, and digital works, ensuring fair use and copyright compliance.
- **Metadata Management:** The process of organizing and managing descriptive data for digital and physical library resources.
- **Artificial Intelligence (AI) in Libraries:** The use of machine learning algorithms for cataloging, search optimization, and personalized recommendations.
- **Digital India Programme:** A government initiative promoting digital literacy and access to online resources in education and research.
- **Five-Year Plans:** Economic planning frameworks in India that included provisions for library development.
- **Public-Private Partnership (PPP):** A collaboration between the government and private entities to improve library funding and infrastructure.
- **Open Access Resources:** Online scholarly content that is freely accessible without subscription barriers.

NOTE

- **Blockchain in Libraries:** A technology used for secure, transparent, and decentralized management of digital archives and intellectual property.
- **Green Libraries:** Sustainable and environmentally friendly library infrastructure initiatives.

2.15 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 2.1

1. A National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) is essential for ensuring equitable access to information, modernizing library infrastructure, and supporting education and research. In India, the absence of a legally binding national policy has led to disparities in funding, technology adoption, and accessibility, particularly in rural areas. A well-defined NLIP would help integrate public, academic, and digital libraries into a unified system, promote digital transformation, and enhance training for library professionals. Additionally, it would support copyright protection, open-access resources, and the preservation of India's intellectual heritage while ensuring sustainable development in the digital era.
2. Technology is crucial in modern library policy implementation as it enhances access, efficiency, and user experience. Digital libraries, artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), and metadata management improve cataloging and searchability. Initiatives such as the National Digital Library of India (NDLI) and National Virtual Library of India (NVLI) provide online access to vast information resources. However, many libraries in India still lack digital infrastructure, limiting their ability to offer e-books, virtual references, and AI-driven services. Future policies should focus on internet connectivity, cybersecurity, digital literacy training, and AI-based automation to strengthen the library ecosystem.
3. The major challenges in implementing a National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) in India include the lack of a legal framework, inconsistent funding, inadequate digital infrastructure, and poor coordination between government agencies. Unlike developed nations with dedicated library laws, India does not have a national legislation mandating uniform library development. Financial constraints lead to outdated collections and poor maintenance, particularly in rural libraries. Additionally, copyright regulations, limited digitization efforts, and the absence of a centralized digital repository further hinder policy execution.

Overcoming these challenges requires sustainable funding, improved technology integration, and a collaborative approach among stakeholders.

NOTE**2.16 SUGGESTED READING – OER**

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3672	

2.17 REFERENCES

- Agrawal, S. P. National Policy on Library and Information Systems and Services for India: Perspectives and Projections. Concept Publishing, 1992.
- Bhatt, R. K. “Need for National Library and Information Policy in India.” Library Herald, vol. 39, no. 1, 2001, pp. 27–35.
- Choudhury, B. K. Library and Information Policy in India: Past, Present and Future Perspectives. ESS Publications, 2015.
- Debal, C. Public Libraries in India: Development and Perspectives. Mittal Publications, 2001.
- Ghosh, Maitrayee. “Public Libraries in India in the Digital Age: New Paradigms.” Library Philosophy and Practice, 2005, pp. 1–7.
- Gupta, Dinesh K., and Ashok Jambhekar. “What Is National Policy for Library and Information Services?” Library Management, vol. 24, no. 8/9, 2003, pp. 409–420.
- International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA). The Role of Library and Information Policy in Knowledge Societies. IFLA, 2016.
- Kaul, H. K. Library Development in India. Vikas Publishing, 1992.
- Kumar, P. S. G. Indian Library and Information Science Literature. BR Publishing, 1998.
- National Knowledge Commission. Libraries: Gateways to Knowledge – A Roadmap for Revitalization. Government of India, 2007.

NOTE

- Prasad, H. N. Library and Information Policy: A Study of Its Development in India. EssEss Publications, 1994.
- Ranganathan, S. R. Library Development Plan: Thirty Years' Programme for India. Asia Publishing House, 1950.
- Sharma, Pandey S. K. Library Legislation in India. Metropolitan Book Co., 1992.
- Singh, Jagtar. "The Role of Government in Library and Information Policy Formulation in India." Annals of Library and Information Studies, vol. 52, no. 3, 2005, pp. 87-92.
- Venkatappaiah, V. Library Legislation in India: Problems and Prospects. Daya Publishing House, 2007.

2.18 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

- 1. Which committee was the first major initiative toward forming a National Library and Information Policy in India?**
 - a) National Knowledge Commission
 - b) Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation
 - c) Advisory Committee for Libraries (1957)
 - d) National Mission on Libraries
- 2. Which of the following is NOT a key component of the National Mission on Libraries (NML)?**
 - a) Establishing the National Virtual Library of India
 - b) Upgrading public library services
 - c) Launching AI-based cataloging for all libraries
 - d) Developing skills for library professionals
- 3. What was the major reason for the non-implementation of the National Policy on Library and Information Systems (NAPLIS) drafted in 1986?**
 - a) Lack of professional expertise
 - b) Administrative and financial limitations
 - c) Political opposition
 - d) Technological backwardness

NOTE**4. What role does the Ministry of Culture play in the Indian library system?**

- a) Supervises university libraries
- b) Oversees national libraries
- c) Regulates publishing industries
- d) Manages school education policies

5. Which of the following is a significant challenge in implementing a National Library and Information Policy in India?

- a) Lack of public interest in libraries
- b) Absence of national-level library legislation
- c) Overfunding of rural libraries
- d) Surplus of trained librarians

Answer with Explanations:

1. **c) Advisory Committee for Libraries (1957)** - The Advisory Committee for Libraries, chaired by K. P. Sinha in 1957, was the first significant step toward structuring a national policy for libraries in India.
2. **c) Launching AI-based cataloging for all libraries** - While AI is an emerging trend in library cataloging, NML primarily focuses on digital libraries, training, and public library services, rather than launching AI-driven cataloging nationwide.
3. **b) Administrative and financial limitations** - Although NAPLIS proposed comprehensive guidelines, it was never officially implemented due to bureaucratic hurdles and lack of adequate financial support.
4. **b) Oversees national libraries** - The Ministry of Culture is responsible for the administration of national-level libraries, including the National Library of India.
5. **b) Absence of national-level library legislation** - India lacks a national law that mandates uniform library policies, leading to inconsistent development and funding across states.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. What is the significance of a National Library and Information Policy (NLIP) in India?
2. What are the key objectives of a National Library and Information Policy?

NOTE

3. Explain the role of the National Mission on Libraries (NML) in modernizing the Indian library system.
4. What are some of the major challenges in implementing a National Library Policy in India?

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the evolution of Library and Information Policy in India, highlighting the major initiatives and committees involved in shaping its development.
2. Explain the key challenges in implementing a National Library and Information Policy in India and suggest possible solutions for overcoming these obstacles.
3. Evaluate the role of the government in formulating and implementing Library and Information Policy in India. How do various government bodies contribute to the library sector?

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Analyze the impact of digital transformation on libraries in India. How can a National Library and Information Policy integrate digital resources to improve accessibility and efficiency?
2. Propose policy recommendations for strengthening the National Library and Information Policy in India. What measures should be taken to ensure inclusivity and sustainability in the Indian library system?
3. How does the National Digital Library of India (NDLI) contribute to the library system?
4. How can technology help in strengthening the National Library and Information Policy?

UNIT 3

GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF LIS EDUCATION IN INDIA

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 3.1 Introduction**
- 3.2 Objective**
- 3.3 The Growth and Development of LIS Education in India**
- 3.4 Early Beginnings of LIS Education in India**
- 3.5 Expansion of LIS Education Post-Independence**
- 3.6 Role of UGC and Library Associations in LIS Education**
- 3.7 Introduction of ICT in LIS Education**
- 3.8 Challenges in LIS Education in India**
- 3.9 Future Trends in LIS Education**
- 3.10 Impact of LIS Education on Library Services**
- 3.11 Conclusion and Future Directions**
- 3.12 Summary**
- 3.13 Glossary**
- 3.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 3.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 3.16 Reference**
- 3.17 Exercise**

3.1 INTRODUCTION

The growth and development of LIS education in India have undergone several phases, beginning with informal training in the early 20th century to the establishment of comprehensive degree programs in the modern era. The early years of LIS education were marked by efforts to professionalize library services, primarily led by pioneers like W.A. Borden and Dr. S. R. Ranganathan. The introduction of diploma courses in library science at universities such as Madras and Delhi paved the way for more structured educational programs. Post-independence, LIS education expanded significantly with the establishment of full-fledged degree programs, leading to the Bachelor's, Master's, and Doctoral levels in Library and Information Science. The UGC played a key role in standardizing LIS curricula across Indian universities, ensuring that programs met international academic standards.

NOTE

With the advancement of technology, LIS education has continuously adapted to new challenges and opportunities. The integration of digital librarianship, information retrieval systems, and knowledge management into LIS curricula reflects the changing landscape of the profession. Online learning platforms and open educational resources (OERs) have also made LIS education more accessible. The establishment of institutions like the DRTC and the National Institute of Science Communication and Policy Research (NIScPR) has further contributed to research and innovation in LIS education. Despite these developments, challenges such as outdated curricula, inadequate faculty training, and limited funding continue to hinder progress. The future of LIS education in India lies in embracing emerging technologies, fostering research collaborations, and ensuring greater alignment with the needs of the information society.

3.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To trace the historical evolution of LIS education in India.
- To examine the role of academic institutions in shaping LIS curricula.
- To analyze the impact of technological advancements on LIS education.
- To assess challenges faced by LIS education programs.
- To explore future directions for LIS education in India.

3.3 THE GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF LIS EDUCATION IN INDIA

The growth and development of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India reflect the broader socio-technological transformations occurring over the past century. Initially rooted in colonial administrative needs, LIS education in India began with informal training and basic library operation courses in the early 20th century. The efforts of Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, known as the father of library science in India, were instrumental in shaping the discipline into a formal academic field. In 1911, the first formal library science course was initiated at Baroda by W.A. Borden, but it was Dr. Ranganathan's work at the University of Madras in 1929 that marked the beginning of systematic LIS education in India. Over time, the curriculum expanded from traditional topics like cataloguing, classification, and reference services to embrace documentation, indexing, abstracting, and eventually, information technology. The focus shifted from the

NOTE

management of physical libraries to the efficient handling of digital information systems. By the mid-20th century, LIS education had established a firm academic foundation with diploma and degree programs being offered by several universities. The growing demand for professional librarians across public, academic, and special libraries facilitated the institutionalization of LIS programs throughout India.

The post-independence period marked a significant phase in the consolidation and expansion of LIS education in India. Recognizing the importance of libraries in national development, the Indian government and various academic bodies took concrete steps to formalize and promote LIS education. The University Grants Commission (UGC) introduced model syllabi and provided funding to universities to develop LIS departments, while institutions like the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) in Bangalore and the Indian National Scientific Documentation Centre (INSDOC), now NISCAIR, emphasized research and specialized training. During this period, LIS education diversified into bachelor's, master's, M.Phil., and Ph.D. programs, allowing for a deeper academic engagement with emerging areas such as information systems, knowledge management, and information retrieval. Accreditation and quality assurance mechanisms were also introduced, helping to standardize LIS education across the country. Furthermore, professional organizations such as the Indian Library Association (ILA) and the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) contributed significantly by organizing conferences, funding research, and advocating policy reforms. The 1980s and 1990s saw the proliferation of LIS programs across various state and central universities, supported by government policies that recognized the critical role of libraries in the educational infrastructure.

In the contemporary digital age, LIS education in India is experiencing a paradigm shift that aligns with global technological trends and the growing importance of information science in the knowledge economy. Modern LIS programs now incorporate modules on digital libraries, metadata standards, open access, web-based information services, data curation, artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), and information ethics. The rise of Massive Open Online Courses (MOOCs), National Digital Library of India (NDLI), and e-learning platforms such as SWAYAM has further transformed the teaching and learning landscape in LIS education. Many LIS schools have revised their curricula to include ICT skills, research data management, digital preservation, and information architecture. Additionally, the increasing collaboration between LIS institutions and global organizations like IFLA and UNESCO has brought in international perspectives and best practices. However, challenges such as outdated curricula in some universities, lack of trained faculty in advanced technologies, and limited practical exposure remain. To address these issues, there is a

NOTE

pressing need for curriculum modernization, industry-academia linkages, and interdisciplinary integration with fields such as computer science, data analytics, and communication studies. By embracing these future-oriented approaches, LIS education in India can equip future professionals with the skills and knowledge needed to navigate an increasingly complex and digital information landscape.

3.4 EARLY BEGINNINGS OF LIS EDUCATION IN INDIA

The foundations of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India were laid in the early 20th century, driven by the necessity to train skilled library professionals. The first structured library science course in India was introduced in 1911 at the Baroda State Library, initiated by Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III, who was deeply influenced by Western models of library education. This initiative was aimed at developing trained library professionals to manage state-funded libraries effectively. The early curriculum was basic and practical, covering areas such as cataloguing, classification, and library administration. However, it was limited in scope, lacking formal theoretical foundations and advanced methodologies.

The real turning point in LIS education came with the contribution of Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, regarded as the father of Library Science in India. His pioneering work, including the Five Laws of Library Science and Colon Classification system, laid the intellectual foundation for LIS education. In 1929, the first formal postgraduate course in Library Science was introduced at the Madras Library Association (MALA) under Ranganathan's guidance. His efforts led to the establishment of a standardized LIS curriculum, professional training modules, and a research-oriented approach. By the 1940s, major Indian universities such as Delhi University and Banaras Hindu University (BHU) started offering diploma and postgraduate courses in LIS, marking a significant step toward professionalizing the field.

3.5 EXPANSION OF LIS EDUCATION POST-INDEPENDENCE

After India's independence in 1947, the country witnessed a surge in higher education institutions, research centers, and libraries, necessitating a more structured approach to LIS education. The University of Delhi (1946) was among the first institutions to introduce a full-time Bachelor of Library Science (B.Lib.Sc.) program, setting the stage for standardized graduate and postgraduate LIS courses across India. During the 1950s and 1960s, the demand for qualified librarians

and information professionals led to the establishment of library schools at major universities, including the University of Bombay, Osmania University, and Punjab University.

One of the most significant developments during this period was the formation of the University Grants Commission (UGC) in 1956, which played a crucial role in standardizing LIS education, funding research projects, and improving teaching methodologies. The 1960s and 1970s saw an increased emphasis on documentation and information science, with institutions such as the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) in Bangalore and the Indian National Scientific Documentation Centre (INSDOC) in New Delhi pioneering research and technological advancements in LIS. The introduction of the Master of Library Science (M.Lib.Sc.) and Ph.D. programs further enhanced the academic and professional status of LIS education.

NOTE

3.6 ROLE OF UGC AND LIBRARY ASSOCIATIONS IN LIS EDUCATION

The University Grants Commission (UGC) has been a key regulatory body in shaping LIS education in India. Recognizing the importance of information professionals in a knowledge-based society, the UGC developed curriculum guidelines, research funding mechanisms, and accreditation policies for LIS education. The UGC Model Curriculum (2001) emphasized the integration of information technology, research methodologies, and digital resource management in LIS programs.

APART-from the UGC, various library associations have significantly contributed to LIS education development. The Indian Library Association (ILA), founded in 1933, has played an active role in curriculum development, faculty training, and professional networking. Other organizations, such as the Indian Association of Special Libraries and Information Centres (IASLIC) and the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), have focused on policy advocacy, library funding, and technological integration. These bodies have ensured that LIS education remains dynamic and responsive to the changing technological and professional landscape.

3.7 INTRODUCTION OF ICT IN LIS EDUCATION

The integration of Information and Communication Technology (ICT) in Library and Information Science (LIS) education revolutionized the way library services were delivered and managed. The late 20th century saw a significant shift in how libraries operated, with the adoption of computerization and digital technologies that streamlined cataloging, indexing, and information retrieval. In the 1990s, the need for efficient

NOTE

resource management in libraries led to the introduction of automated systems that could handle large volumes of data. This shift was not only about managing physical resources but also about incorporating electronic resources, allowing for better accessibility and interactivity with users. Along with library automation, LIS curricula were restructured to include core subjects such as digital preservation, metadata standards like MARC and Dublin Core, and library management systems. The widespread adoption of these technologies in LIS education reflected a broader global trend of technological integration in information management.

As technology continued to evolve, so did the LIS curriculum. With the internet boom and rapid digitization, new topics were introduced to cater to the growing demand for specialized skills in electronic resource management, digital information storage, and retrieval techniques. Educational institutions began to offer specialized courses on emerging fields like big data analytics, artificial intelligence (AI), and the management of digital libraries. Programs also began incorporating tools for managing electronic resources, like online databases, e-journals, and digital repositories. A significant development was the inclusion of distance learning programs, such as those offered by IGNOU (Indira Gandhi National Open University), making LIS education more accessible to students in rural and remote areas. Today, LIS education has become highly interdisciplinary, with students receiving training not just in traditional library functions but also in fields like data science and cybersecurity, equipping them to deal with the complex challenges posed by the digital information age.

3.8 CHALLENGES IN LIS EDUCATION IN INDIA

While LIS education in India has made remarkable strides, there are still numerous challenges that hinder its full potential. One of the foremost challenges is the outdated nature of many LIS curricula, which still primarily focus on traditional library practices and fail to integrate contemporary technological advancements. While topics like library automation and digital resources are introduced, many programs do not adequately cover emerging technologies like artificial intelligence, blockchain, and advanced data management tools. As a result, students graduating from LIS programs may not have the skillset required to handle the demands of modern library systems that depend heavily on advanced information technologies. To address this gap, educational institutions must rethink their curricula and adopt an approach that incorporates new technological trends, ensuring that students are well-equipped for the future.

In addition to outdated curricula, there is a significant disparity in the availability and quality of LIS programs across India. While major urban

centers like Delhi, Mumbai, and Bangalore offer a range of high-quality LIS programs, institutions in rural and regional areas often struggle with limited resources, outdated syllabi, and undertrained faculty. This uneven distribution leads to unequal access to quality education and limits opportunities for students from rural areas. Moreover, the lack of industry-academia partnerships further exacerbates the problem, as many LIS programs fail to incorporate real-world experiences such as internships, hands-on training, or collaborative research projects with the industry. This lack of practical exposure leaves many graduates underprepared for the challenges they will face in their professional careers. Overcoming these challenges requires a coordinated effort to modernize curricula, train educators, and develop stronger links between academic institutions and industry stakeholders.

NOTE

3.9 FUTURE TRENDS IN LIS EDUCATION

The future of Library and Information Science (LIS) education is poised for significant transformation as the field continues to adapt to the challenges of the digital age. One of the most notable trends is the increasing emphasis on technological specialization within LIS programs. As libraries and information centers increasingly rely on sophisticated systems for managing vast amounts of digital information, there is a growing need for professionals skilled in data analytics, cloud computing, and digital content curation. These areas are becoming integral to LIS education, as they equip students with the tools necessary to manage large data sets, ensure data security, and create user-friendly interfaces for accessing information. With the explosion of digital content, future LIS professionals must be prepared to handle complex data management tasks while ensuring that information remains accessible and properly curated.

In addition to technological specialization, LIS education is moving towards a more interdisciplinary approach, where students are encouraged to explore the intersections of library science with other fields like computer science, information technology, and digital media studies. Programs are increasingly incorporating courses on artificial intelligence, machine learning, and big data to prepare students for the rapidly changing landscape of information management. At the same time, the rise of virtual learning platforms, MOOCs (Massive Open Online Courses), and AI-driven teaching methods is making LIS education more accessible to students worldwide. These platforms offer flexible learning opportunities that transcend geographical and economic barriers. In the future, LIS education will also see greater collaboration between academia and industry, with a focus on preparing students for the real-world challenges they will face in digital information environments. This shift will ensure that LIS professionals

NOTE

remain at the forefront of managing and curating the increasingly complex world of digital information.

**Activity 3.1**

Activity Title: Preparing a Timeline of LIS Education

Objective:

To understand the major milestones in the growth of LIS education in India.

Materials Required:

- Textbook/SLM
- Notebook
- Pen

Procedure:

1. Read the chapter carefully.
2. Prepare a simple timeline showing five important developments in LIS education.
3. Mention the year and the event.

Outcome:

The learner identifies important stages in the development of LIS education in India.

3.10 IMPACT OF LIS EDUCATION ON LIBRARY SERVICES

The quality of library services in India has been greatly influenced by advancements in Library and Information Science (LIS) education. As the field has evolved to incorporate new technologies, LIS professionals have been able to transform traditional libraries into modern, dynamic information hubs. In the past, libraries primarily served as repositories of books and print materials, but today, they are integral to the digital information landscape. With the skills gained from modern LIS education, librarians have been able to enhance user services through the adoption of digital literacy programs, virtual reference desks, and personalized search engines powered by artificial intelligence (AI). These developments have allowed libraries to reach a wider audience and provide more tailored services, enhancing their value to the community.

The shift from physical to digital information management has also allowed libraries to expand their roles. Libraries now offer e-resources such as e-books, digital archives, and online journals, enabling users to access information remotely. Additionally, the rise of virtual reference services and AI-driven tools has allowed libraries to provide more efficient and user-friendly search experiences. These innovations are a

direct result of the increasing integration of ICT into LIS education, which has equipped library professionals with the knowledge and skills needed to leverage technology for improved service delivery. The continuous emphasis on professional development ensures that LIS professionals stay updated with the latest trends and best practices, keeping libraries relevant in an ever-changing information landscape.

NOTE

3.11 CONCLUSION AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The growth and development of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India reflect the changing landscape of information management and the role of libraries in the digital age. While significant progress has been made in terms of curriculum development, technological integration, and expanded access to education, there are still challenges that need to be addressed. These include outdated syllabi, faculty shortages, and a lack of industry partnerships that prevent LIS programs from fully preparing students for the modern information environment. To overcome these obstacles, there must be a concerted effort to modernize curricula, train educators in emerging technologies, and strengthen ties between academic institutions and the professional community. This will ensure that LIS graduates are well-equipped to manage the challenges of managing digital information and contribute effectively to the knowledge economy.

Looking forward, the future of LIS education in India is closely tied to technological innovation. As libraries continue to move toward digital and AI-driven environments, LIS programs will need to integrate cutting-edge technologies such as big data analytics, blockchain, and cloud computing into their curricula. Additionally, promoting lifelong learning and encouraging interdisciplinary collaboration will help ensure that LIS professionals remain adaptable and capable of handling new challenges as they arise. By fostering strong public-private partnerships, integrating practical learning experiences, and benchmarking programs against global standards, LIS education in India will continue to evolve in a way that supports the ongoing development of library services and the knowledge economy.

☒ Check Your Progress 3.1

1. How did Dr. S.R. Ranganathan contribute to the development of LIS education in India?

.....

NOTE

2. What role did the UGC and library associations play in shaping LIS education in India?

.....
.....
.....

3. What are the major challenges facing LIS education in India today?

.....
.....
.....

3.12 SUMMARY

The growth and development of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India have been driven by historical milestones, societal needs, and technological advancements. It began in the early 20th century with basic training in library operations, notably the 1911 LIS course at Baroda State Library introduced by Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III. Dr. S.R. Ranganathan later laid the theoretical foundation with his Five Laws of Library Science and Colon Classification system, leading to India's first postgraduate LIS course in 1929 at the Madras Library Association. By the mid-20th century, institutions like Delhi University and Banaras Hindu University offered diploma and postgraduate courses, professionalizing the discipline. Post-independence expansion in education led to the introduction of B.Lib.Sc., M.Lib.Sc., and Ph.D. programs nationwide, supported by the University Grants Commission (UGC), which helped standardize curricula and promote research. Key institutions such as the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) and INSDOC advanced LIS research and training. The late 20th century saw a digital shift, with Information and Communication Technology (ICT) transforming LIS curricula to include metadata, AI, big data, and digital resource management. Distance learning, led by IGNOU, improved nationwide access. However, issues like outdated content, faculty shortages, and regional disparities persist. Modern LIS education must evolve through tech integration, interdisciplinary focus, and academic-industry collaboration. With innovations like AI-based services and blockchain, LIS professionals are transforming libraries into digital knowledge hubs. Continued advancement in LIS education is essential for empowering digital literacy, supporting knowledge management, and reinforcing India's information economy in the global era.

3.13 GLOSSARY

NOTE

- **Library and Information Science (LIS)** – An academic and professional discipline focused on managing information resources, libraries, and digital information systems.
- **Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III** – The ruler of Baroda State who introduced the first formal LIS course in India in 1911.
- **Dr. S.R. Ranganathan** – The father of Library Science in India, known for the Five Laws of Library Science and the Colon Classification system.
- **Five Laws of Library Science** – Fundamental principles of library management proposed by Dr. S.R. Ranganathan.
- **Colon Classification System** – A library classification system developed by Dr. S.R. Ranganathan that organizes information based on facets.
- **University Grants Commission (UGC)** – A statutory body responsible for coordinating higher education and setting standards in Indian universities, including LIS education.
- **Indian Library Association (ILA)** – A professional body that works towards the advancement of library science education and research in India.
- **Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF)** – An organization dedicated to developing and promoting public libraries in India.
- **Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC)** – A research center in Bangalore that promotes documentation and information science research.
- **Indian National Scientific Documentation Centre (INSDOC)** – A research organization that focuses on scientific documentation and information retrieval.
- **Information and Communication Technology (ICT)** – A field that integrates technology in managing and retrieving information resources.
- **Metadata Standards** – Standardized formats used to describe and organize digital resources, such as MARC and Dublin Core.
- **Artificial Intelligence (AI) in LIS** – The application of AI in library services, including automated cataloging, user recommendation systems, and knowledge management.
- **Digital Libraries** – Libraries that provide access to digital resources, including e-books, online journals, and electronic archives.

NOTE

- **Massive Open Online Courses (MOOCs)** – Online courses that provide large-scale education opportunities, including LIS training.

3.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 3.1

1. Dr. S.R. Ranganathan played a transformative role in LIS education in India by introducing theoretical and practical advancements. He developed the Five Laws of Library Science, which established the guiding principles for library management and information services. His Colon Classification system revolutionized information organization, making it easier to retrieve library resources. In 1929, he introduced the first formal postgraduate course in Library Science at the Madras Library Association. His efforts led to the development of standardized LIS curricula, structured professional training, and a research-oriented approach, shaping LIS education in India into a specialized discipline.
2. The University Grants Commission (UGC) has been instrumental in standardizing LIS education by developing curriculum guidelines, funding research, and accrediting LIS programs. It introduced the UGC Model Curriculum in 2001, emphasizing the integration of ICT, research methodologies, and digital library management in LIS education. Additionally, organizations such as the Indian Library Association (ILA) and the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) have played significant roles in policy advocacy, faculty training, and professional networking. These bodies have ensured that LIS education remains dynamic, relevant, and aligned with technological and professional advancements.
3. Despite its progress, LIS education in India faces several challenges, including outdated curricula, a shortage of qualified faculty, and limited research funding. Many institutions still focus on traditional theories, neglecting emerging trends such as artificial intelligence, big data analytics, and digital curation. Additionally, regional disparities exist, with urban institutions offering advanced LIS courses while rural and regional library schools struggle with inadequate infrastructure. The lack of strong industry-academia collaboration further affects the employability of LIS graduates. Addressing these issues requires curriculum modernization, faculty training, increased funding, and enhanced practical learning opportunities.

3.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER**NOTE**

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3673	

3.16 REFERENCES

- Ali, Amjad. Library and Information Science Education in India. EssEss Publications, 2013.
- Bawden, David, and Lyn Robinson. Information Science. Facet Publishing, 2012.
- Bhattacharya, G. Library and Information Science: A Study of its Growth and Development in India. Concept Publishing, 2000.
- Chatterjee, Amitabha. Elements of Information Organization and Dissemination. Chandos Publishing, 2016.
- Haravu, L. J. Library Automation: Design, Principles and Practice. Allied Publishers, 2004.
- IGNOU. Library and Information Science Study Material: Bachelor's and Master's Programs. Indira Gandhi National Open University, 2018.
- Indian Library Association (ILA). Guidelines for LIS Education and Training in India. ILA, 2015.
- Jain, M. K. Information Technology and Library Science. Anmol Publications, 2002.
- Kaula, P. N. Library and Information Science in India: Past, Present, and Future. Vikas Publishing, 1990.
- Kumar, P. S. G. Foundations of Library and Information Science. B. R. Publishing, 2003.
- Ranganathan, S. R. The Five Laws of Library Science. Asia Publishing House, 1931.
- Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF). Library Development in India: Reports and Policies. RRRLF, 2010.
- Satija, M. P. The Theory and Practice of Library Classification. Chandos Publishing, 2013.

NOTE

- Sen, B. K. Library and Information Science Education in India: Challenges and Perspectives. EssEss Publications, 2009.
- University Grants Commission (UGC). Model Curriculum for Library and Information Science. UGC, 2001.

3.17 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

- 1. Who is considered the father of Library and Information Science (LIS) in India?**
 - a) P. N. Kaula
 - b) B. S. Kesavan
 - c) S. R. Ranganathan
 - d) M. P. Satija
- 2. Which was the first Indian institution to offer a structured course in Library Science?**
 - a) University of Delhi
 - b) Banaras Hindu University
 - c) Baroda State Library
 - d) Madras Library Association
- 3. Which organization plays a key role in setting LIS curriculum standards in India?**
 - a) National Digital Library of India
 - b) University Grants Commission (UGC)
 - c) Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF)
 - d) Indian Association of Special Libraries and Information Centres (IASLIC)
- 4. What is the primary focus of the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC)?**
 - a) Public library management
 - b) Digital preservation
 - c) Research in library automation and information science
 - d) Bibliographic indexing

5. Which technology has significantly transformed LIS education in the 21st century?

- a) Microfilming
- b) Artificial Intelligence
- c) Typewriting
- d) Card Cataloging

NOTE**Answer with Explanations:**

1. **c) S. R. Ranganathan** - Dr. S. R. Ranganathan introduced the Five Laws of Library Science and developed the Colon Classification system, which significantly influenced LIS education in India.
2. **c) Baroda State Library** - The Baroda State Library, under the patronage of Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III, introduced the first structured library science course in 1911.
3. **b) University Grants Commission (UGC)** - The UGC formulates LIS curriculum guidelines, funds research, and ensures academic quality in LIS education.
4. **c) Research in library automation and information science - DRTC**, established by S. R. Ranganathan in Bangalore, is known for pioneering research in documentation, indexing, and digital information management.
5. **b) Artificial Intelligence** - AI has revolutionized LIS by enhancing information retrieval, digital cataloging, and automated indexing, making library services more efficient.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. What were the contributions of S. R. Ranganathan to LIS education in India?
2. How did the establishment of the University Grants Commission (UGC) impact LIS education?
3. How has the introduction of ICT influenced LIS curricula in India?
4. What are some challenges faced by LIS education in India today?

PART-2**C. Long answer type question (200 words)**

1. Discuss the growth and development of LIS education in India from the early 20th century to the present day.
2. Analyze the role of the University Grants Commission (UGC) and library associations in shaping LIS education in India.

NOTE

3. How has Information and Communication Technology (ICT) transformed LIS education and professional practices?

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Evaluate the major challenges faced by LIS education in India and suggest potential solutions to improve its quality and relevance.
2. Discuss the future trends in LIS education and their potential impact on library services in India.
3. What role did the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) play in LIS education?

UNIT 4

LIS EDUCATION BEFORE AND AFTER INDEPENDENCE

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 4.1 Introduction**
- 4.2 Objective**
- 4.3 LIS Education Before and After Independence**
- 4.4 LIS Education in the Pre-Independence Era**
- 4.5 Role of S.R. Ranganathan in LIS Education Development**
- 4.6 Growth of LIS Education in Post-Independence India**
- 4.7 LIS Curricula and Course Structure in India**
- 4.8 Distance Education and Online Learning in LIS**
- 4.9 LIS Research and Doctoral Programs**
- 4.10 Challenges and Opportunities in LIS Education**
- 4.11 Future Trends in LIS Education in India**
- 4.12 Summary**
- 4.13 Glossary**
- 4.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 4.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 4.16 Reference**
- 4.17 Exercise**

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Before India's independence in 1947, LIS education was limited to a few diploma courses, primarily influenced by Western models. The earliest formal training in library science was introduced at Baroda by W.A. Borden, followed by diploma courses in Madras and Punjab. Dr. S. R. Ranganathan's contributions during this period laid the foundation for modern LIS education in India. However, the British colonial government did not prioritize the development of a strong public library system, resulting in slow progress. Library training programs were few, and libraries lacked standardized management systems. The absence of a national library policy further hampered the growth of LIS education, limiting its reach to a select group of professionals. Post-independence, LIS education underwent a significant transformation. The Indian government, recognizing the importance of libraries for national development, established more LIS programs in universities and

NOTE

research institutions. The UGC and professional bodies like the ILA played key roles in expanding LIS education to include advanced degrees and research opportunities. Digital technology has further revolutionized LIS education, leading to the development of new disciplines such as digital curation, information analytics, and knowledge organization. Today, LIS education in India stands at the intersection of tradition and innovation, striving to keep pace with global developments in the field.

4.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To compare LIS education before and after Indian independence.
- To analyze the impact of colonial influences on early LIS training.
- To analyse the role of UGC and professional associations in LIS expansion.
- To explore the influence of digital technologies on LIS curricula.
- To evaluate the current challenges in LIS education.

4.3 LIS EDUCATION BEFORE AND AFTER INDEPENDENCE

Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India has evolved significantly over the past century, reflecting the changing landscape of knowledge organization, information dissemination, and technological advancements. Before India's independence in 1947, library education was largely informal and scattered, with a limited number of institutions offering structured courses in librarianship. The focus during the pre-independence period was primarily on training library personnel through short-term courses, apprenticeships, and on-the-job learning. The British colonial administration established some libraries, but there was no national-level policy or structured approach to LIS education. The first formal initiatives in library education were influenced by British and American models, with institutions such as the University of Madras offering short courses in librarianship as early as 1929. However, these early efforts were limited in scope, catering only to a small number of professionals. The need for trained librarians was recognized, but there was no coordinated effort to standardize LIS education or integrate it into the academic curriculum at a higher level.

After independence, India's government took significant steps to institutionalize LIS education, recognizing libraries as essential components of educational and research institutions. With the establishment of the University Grants Commission (UGC) and various

NOTE

education commissions, formal LIS programs were introduced in universities across the country. Visionary leaders like Dr. S.R. Ranganathan played a crucial role in shaping the curriculum and setting high academic standards for LIS education. Over time, diploma and degree courses evolved into postgraduate and research programs, expanding the discipline beyond traditional librarianship to include information science, digital libraries, and knowledge management. The shift from traditional library science to modern information science reflects India's growing emphasis on digital literacy, electronic resource management, and the integration of emerging technologies in library services. Today, LIS education continues to evolve, incorporating advancements such as artificial intelligence (AI), big data analytics, and cloud computing, making it more relevant in the digital age.

4.4 LIS EDUCATION IN THE PRE-INDEPENDENCE ERA

Before India's independence, the field of Library and Information Science (LIS) education was in its nascent stages, largely unstructured and informal. Libraries existed primarily in academic institutions, government offices, and princely states, but there was little emphasis on professional training for librarians. Library management was mostly based on traditional methods, with book collections being maintained without standardized cataloging or classification systems. The British colonial administration established some libraries, but they were largely for bureaucratic purposes rather than public access. In this scenario, there was no systematic approach to LIS education, and most library personnel acquired their skills through on-the-job experience rather than formal instruction. However, there were early initiatives to introduce professional training, particularly through the efforts of progressive rulers and educators. One notable example was Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III of Baroda, who introduced systematic reforms in library management and sent professionals abroad to acquire training in modern library practices. His vision contributed to the initial steps towards structured LIS education in India. The Baroda State Library System became one of the first organized attempts to introduce library professionalism in the country.

A more formal approach to LIS education emerged with the involvement of W.A. Borden, a disciple of the American librarian Melvil Dewey. Borden was invited to India in 1911 to develop library education, marking an important shift towards professional training. His efforts led to the creation of library science programs based on Western models. However, the most significant milestone in pre-independence LIS education came in 1929 when Dr. S.R. Ranganathan introduced the first structured LIS course at the University of Madras. This course laid

NOTE

the foundation for academic training in library science, emphasizing cataloging, classification, and bibliographic control. Despite these pioneering efforts, LIS education remained limited in scope and reach before independence. The absence of national policies, financial constraints, and a general lack of awareness about the role of libraries in education and research hindered its development. The few LIS programs that existed were scattered across select institutions and were not widely accessible. The pre-independence era, therefore, served as a foundational period, setting the stage for the systematic growth of LIS education in post-independence India.

4.5 ROLE OF S.R. RANGANATHAN IN LIS EDUCATION DEVELOPMENT

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan played an instrumental role in the development of LIS education in India, earning him the title of the "Father of Library Science in India." His contributions reshaped the way libraries functioned, introducing structured training programs for librarians and advocating for academic recognition of the discipline. Ranganathan's most significant contribution was the introduction of the Five Laws of Library Science, which emphasized user-centric services and efficient organization of knowledge. His philosophy revolutionized library practices by shifting the focus from mere book storage to dynamic user engagement. Additionally, he developed the Colon Classification system, which became a landmark in library cataloging and classification. Recognizing the need for formal LIS education, Ranganathan established the first systematic LIS program at the University of Madras in 1929. This program set the foundation for professional library training, incorporating theoretical knowledge and practical experience to equip librarians with essential skills.

Beyond curriculum development, Ranganathan actively worked to institutionalize LIS education at national and international levels. He promoted the establishment of postgraduate and doctoral programs, encouraging advanced research in the field. His advocacy led to the inclusion of library science as a recognized academic discipline in universities across India. Ranganathan also played a key role in drafting library legislation, which helped formalize library networks in the country. His impact extended beyond India, as his classification system and theoretical contributions gained international recognition. Today, Ranganathan's principles continue to influence LIS education, with his Five Laws serving as guiding principles in modern library management and information services. His vision laid the groundwork for future developments, ensuring that LIS education remains dynamic, research-driven, and responsive to technological advancements.

4.6 GROWTH OF LIS EDUCATION IN POST-INDEPENDENCE INDIA

NOTE

After gaining independence in 1947, India witnessed a significant transformation in the field of Library and Information Science (LIS) education. The post-independence period saw the establishment of various universities and institutions offering LIS programs, which were instrumental in shaping the profession and standardizing library services across the country. The government recognized the importance of libraries as centers of knowledge dissemination and invested in their expansion, particularly through the University Grants Commission (UGC). The UGC played a pivotal role in introducing LIS courses as PART-of the higher education system, funding the development of library infrastructure, and promoting research in the field. The inclusion of LIS as an academic discipline in major universities led to the establishment of diploma, bachelor's, and master's programs. This period also witnessed the introduction of library legislation in several states, which further strengthened the professional status of librarians and emphasized the need for trained personnel in public and academic libraries.

Technological advancements and growing academic demands led to further developments in LIS education in the latter half of the 20th century. Specialized courses were introduced, focusing on cataloging, classification, bibliographic control, and research methodologies. Many universities expanded their LIS programs to include doctoral research, allowing for the study of advanced topics such as information retrieval, digital libraries, and knowledge management. Professional associations such as the Indian Library Association (ILA) and the Indian Association of Special Libraries and Information Centres (IASLIC) played a key role in curriculum development and policy advocacy. The integration of LIS education with information technology became increasingly evident during this time, with courses incorporating automation, database management, and digital resource organization. The post-independence era thus laid the foundation for a structured and progressive LIS education system, preparing professionals to meet the evolving needs of library users and research institutions.

4.7 LIS CURRICULA AND COURSE STRUCTURE IN INDIA

The LIS curricula in India have evolved over the years to reflect changing trends in librarianship, technological advancements, and information management practices. The core structure of LIS courses typically includes subjects such as library classification, cataloging, information

NOTE

retrieval, reference services, and library automation. The curriculum is designed to equip students with both theoretical knowledge and practical skills, ensuring that they are prepared for various roles in libraries, information centers, and research institutions. At the undergraduate level, students are introduced to fundamental concepts of librarianship, including bibliographic organization, documentation, and information sources. The postgraduate level delves deeper into specialized areas such as knowledge organization, digital librarianship, research methodologies, and user studies. Many universities also offer elective courses in emerging areas like data analytics, artificial intelligence in libraries, and information architecture, reflecting the growing integration of technology in the field.

In addition to academic coursework, LIS education in India places a strong emphasis on hands-on training and professional development. Internship programs and fieldwork in libraries, documentation centers, and archives provide students with real-world experience, helping them apply theoretical concepts in practical settings. Universities also encourage participation in workshops, seminars, and conferences to expose students to current research and industry best practices. The National Knowledge Commission (NKC) and UGC have been actively involved in revising LIS curricula to align with global standards, ensuring that graduates are equipped with skills relevant to the modern information landscape. The introduction of online and distance learning programs by institutions such as Indira Gandhi National Open University (IGNOU) has further expanded access to LIS education, allowing working professionals to upgrade their qualifications without disrupting their careers.

**4.8 DISTANCE EDUCATION AND ONLINE LEARNING
IN LIS**

The expansion of distance education and online learning has revolutionized Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India. This transformation has significantly enhanced accessibility, allowing individuals from diverse backgrounds to pursue LIS qualifications. Prominent institutions such as Indira Gandhi National Open University (IGNOU), Annamalai University, and various state open universities have established LIS programs catering to working professionals and students unable to attend conventional classroom-based courses. These programs employ a hybrid approach, incorporating printed study materials, digital lectures, virtual libraries, and periodic contact classes to ensure a well-rounded learning experience. Distance education has particularly benefited individuals in rural and remote areas, enabling them to enhance their career prospects through flexible learning opportunities.

NOTE

Massive Open Online Courses (MOOCs) and digital platforms have further strengthened LIS education by offering specialized courses on topics such as digital curation, metadata management, and information retrieval. Platforms like SWAYAM and NPTEL provide high-quality LIS courses developed by leading academics, making professional development more accessible. Additionally, Learning Management Systems (LMS) have been integrated into many university programs, fostering interactive learning, real-time assessments, and peer discussions. Despite these advantages, challenges persist in distance LIS education, including the lack of hands-on practical exposure, inadequate laboratory-based training, and inconsistencies in course quality. Efforts by academic institutions and professional bodies continue to address these concerns, with initiatives aimed at improving course delivery, ensuring uniform academic standards, and enhancing student engagement in virtual learning environments.

4.9 LIS RESEARCH AND DOCTORAL PROGRAMS

Research in LIS has gained considerable traction in India, with universities offering doctoral programs to advance scholarly inquiry and innovation in the field. LIS research encompasses a broad range of subjects, including bibliometrics, scientometrics, digital preservation, knowledge management, and information retrieval. Doctoral programs are designed to address contemporary challenges in library science, such as information literacy, open access policies, and the integration of artificial intelligence in library automation. The University Grants Commission (UGC) has played a crucial role in promoting LIS research by offering fellowships, grants, and financial assistance to Ph.D. candidates, fostering an environment of academic excellence.

Interdisciplinary research integrating LIS with fields such as computer science, social sciences, and management has emerged as a significant trend. Collaborative research initiatives involving universities, governmental organizations, and international institutions have further enriched LIS scholarship in India. Conferences, symposiums, and peer-reviewed journal publications provide researchers with platforms to share their findings and contribute to global LIS knowledge. Despite notable progress, challenges such as limited research funding, inconsistencies in research methodologies, and inadequate mentorship opportunities persist. Strengthening research infrastructure, standardizing methodologies, and fostering global research collaborations are essential for enhancing the quality and impact of LIS research in India.

NOTE**4.10 CHALLENGES AND OPPORTUNITIES IN LIS EDUCATION**

LIS education in India faces a range of challenges that hinder its ability to keep pace with the evolving information landscape. One of the primary concerns is the outdated curriculum, which often fails to incorporate the latest advancements in information technology. Traditional teaching methods, which rely heavily on theoretical instruction, do not adequately prepare students for the practical demands of digital librarianship. Additionally, there is a shortage of qualified LIS faculty, limiting the scope for innovative pedagogical practices. The rapid advancement of technologies such as artificial intelligence, big data, and cloud computing poses another challenge, necessitating continuous curriculum updates and faculty training programs.

Despite these challenges, LIS education in India presents numerous opportunities for growth and innovation. The increasing demand for information professionals in areas such as digital libraries, corporate knowledge management, and data analytics has created new career pathways for LIS graduates. The integration of e-learning tools, digital resources, and hands-on experiential learning can significantly enhance the quality of LIS education. Strengthening collaborations between academia and industry, fostering research partnerships, and leveraging technological advancements for curriculum development can address existing challenges and ensure LIS education remains relevant and dynamic. The growing recognition of the role of information professionals in the digital era underscores the need for continued advancements in LIS education to meet contemporary demands.

**Activity 4.1**

Activity Title: Preparing a Timeline of LIS Education

Objective:

To understand the major milestones in the growth of LIS education in India.

Materials Required:

- Textbook/SLM
- Notebook
- Pen

Procedure:

1. Read the chapter carefully.

2. Prepare a simple timeline showing five important developments in LIS education.
3. Mention the year and the event.

Outcome:

The learner identifies important stages in the development of LIS education in India.

NOTE

4.11 FUTURE TRENDS IN LIS EDUCATION IN INDIA

The future of LIS education in India is set to undergo a transformative shift, driven by rapid technological advancements and changing user expectations. Emerging technologies such as artificial intelligence, machine learning, and data science are becoming integral to modern library services, necessitating their inclusion in LIS curricula. Areas such as digital librarianship, open science, and research data management are expected to gain prominence, reflecting the evolving role of library professionals. The role of librarians is also shifting from traditional book custodians to dynamic information specialists responsible for knowledge discovery, digital curation, and information dissemination.

To remain relevant in the digital age, LIS education must adopt a multidisciplinary approach, integrating knowledge from fields such as computer science, information management, and communication studies. The implementation of blended learning models, international collaborations, and competency-based training will enhance the quality of LIS education, ensuring it meets the needs of a knowledge-driven economy. Strengthening practical training components, fostering global research collaborations, and incorporating emerging trends into LIS curricula will help prepare future information professionals for the dynamic challenges of the digital era. As India continues its journey towards becoming a knowledge-based society, the demand for well-trained LIS professionals will continue to grow, reinforcing the critical role of LIS education in shaping the nation's academic and research landscape.

☒ Check Your Progress 4.1

1. How did LIS education evolve before independence?

.....

.....

.....

NOTE

2. What role did S.R. Ranganathan play in the development of LIS education in India?

.....
.....
.....

3. What are the key challenges in LIS education today?

.....
.....
.....

4.12 SUMMARY

Library and Information Science (LIS) education in India has evolved from an informal training system before independence to a structured academic discipline post-independence. Before 1947, there was no standardized LIS education, and most library professionals acquired skills through apprenticeships or short-term courses. The colonial administration established some public libraries, but there was little emphasis on formal training programs. Some early initiatives, like those led by Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III and W.A. Borden, contributed to library development. However, the first structured LIS course was introduced only in 1929 at the University of Madras under the leadership of Dr. S.R. Ranganathan. His contribution to LIS education in India was monumental, as he developed the Colon Classification system, the Five Laws of Library Science, and played a vital role in curriculum development. Ranganathan's influence extended beyond course design; he also advocated for library legislation and professionalization, helping to lay the foundation for modern LIS education in India.

Post-independence, the Indian government took significant steps to institutionalize LIS education, recognizing libraries as crucial to national development. The University Grants Commission (UGC) and other educational bodies played an essential role in standardizing LIS curricula across universities. The 1950s and 1960s saw the introduction of diploma, bachelor's, and master's programs, followed by doctoral research opportunities in later decades. The rise of digital technologies further influenced LIS education, leading to the integration of Information and Communication Technology (ICT), digital libraries, metadata management, and artificial intelligence-based retrieval systems in the curriculum. Despite these advancements, LIS education in India still faces challenges such as outdated teaching methodologies,

lack of uniformity in curricula across institutions, and limited funding for research and faculty development. To address these issues, future LIS programs must emphasize interdisciplinary subjects like data science, machine learning, and digital archiving. Strengthening collaborations between universities, government agencies, and private organizations will help modernize LIS education, ensuring that professionals.

NOTE

4.13 GLOSSARY

- **Library and Information Science (LIS)** – An academic discipline that studies libraries, information organization, and knowledge management.
- **Colon Classification (CC)** – A system of library classification developed by S.R. Ranganathan that uses a faceted approach to organize information.
- **Five Laws of Library Science** – Fundamental principles of library science formulated by Ranganathan to guide library operations and services.
- **Cataloging** – The process of creating, organizing, and maintaining records of books and other materials in a library collection.
- **Metadata** – Data that provides information about other data, commonly used in digital libraries for resource organization.
- **Digital Library** – A collection of digital content that can be accessed electronically, replacing or supplementing traditional print libraries.
- **University Grants Commission (UGC)** – The apex body responsible for maintaining higher education standards in India, including LIS education.
- **Artificial Intelligence (AI)** – The use of intelligent computing systems in library management for indexing, searching, and automated cataloging.
- **Bibliometrics** – A statistical method used in LIS research to analyze books, journal articles, and citation patterns.
- **Information and Communication Technology (ICT)** – The use of digital tools and technologies in managing and disseminating information in libraries.
- **Knowledge Management** – The process of creating, organizing, and sharing knowledge within an institution or organization.

NOTE

- **Library Automation** – The application of technology to automate library functions such as cataloging, circulation, and inventory management.
- **Massive Open Online Courses (MOOCs)** – Online courses that provide open access to LIS education and training programs.
- **National Knowledge Commission (NKC)** – A policy body that provides recommendations for improving India's knowledge infrastructure, including LIS education.
- **Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF)** – A government organization that supports the development and modernization of libraries in India.

4.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 4.1

1. Before India's independence in 1947, LIS education was informal and unstructured. Training was primarily conducted through short-term courses, apprenticeships, and on-the-job learning. The first significant initiative was taken by Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III, who introduced systematic library management practices. W.A. Borden, a disciple of Melvil Dewey, also contributed by introducing professional training programs. However, the most critical milestone was the establishment of a formal LIS course at the University of Madras in 1929 under Dr. S.R. Ranganathan. Despite these early efforts, LIS education remained limited, with few institutions offering structured programs and no national policy to support its development.
2. Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, known as the father of library science in India, made pioneering contributions to LIS education. He developed the Colon Classification system and the Five Laws of Library Science, both of which laid the foundation for modern librarianship. In 1929, he initiated the first formal LIS course at the University of Madras, introducing structured curricula for training library professionals. Ranganathan also advocated for library legislation, professional ethics, and research programs, significantly elevating the academic status of LIS education. His contributions continue to shape LIS curricula and research methodologies in India and beyond.

3. Despite significant advancements, LIS education in India faces several challenges. One major issue is the lack of uniformity in curricula across universities, leading to inconsistencies in training and skill development. Some institutions have embraced digital innovations, while others still follow outdated methodologies. Additionally, there is a shortage of qualified faculty members who can teach emerging subjects like artificial intelligence, data science, and digital preservation. Limited funding for LIS research and infrastructure development also restricts academic growth. Addressing these challenges requires curriculum modernization, government intervention, and industry-academia partnerships to make LIS education more relevant to the digital age.

NOTE**4.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER**

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3674	

4.16 REFERENCES

- Borden, William A. The Evolution of Librarianship in India. New Delhi: National Book Trust, 1929.
- Choudhury, G. G. Modern Information Retrieval Systems and LIS Education in India. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2008.
- Gopinath, M. A. S.R. Ranganathan and Library Education in India: A Historical Perspective. Bangalore: DRTC Publications, 1995.
- Gupta, B. M. Library and Information Science Research in India: Trends and Developments. New Delhi: EssEss Publications, 2000.
- Khanna, J. K. Library and Information Science Education in India: Past, Present, and Future. New Delhi: ESS Publications, 1987.
- Kumar, P. S. G. Foundations of Library and Information Science. New Delhi: B.R. Publishing Corporation, 2003.
- Lahiri, R. Libraries in India: Their Growth and Development. Kolkata: West Bengal Library Association, 2015.
- Mukherjee, A. K. Librarianship: Its Philosophy and History. New Delhi: Asia Publishing House, 1966.

NOTE

- Neelameghan, A. Information Science and Technology for LIS Education. Bangalore: Sarada Ranganathan Endowment for Library Science, 2001.
- Panigrahi, P. K., and Madhusudhan, M. Library Automation and Digital Librarianship in India: A New Perspective. New Delhi: IGI Global, 2019.
- Ranganathan, S. R. The Five Laws of Library Science. Madras: Madras Library Association, 1931.
- Ranganathan, S. R. Colon Classification: Its Theory and Practice. Bangalore: Sarada Ranganathan Endowment for Library Science, 1965.
- Satija, M. P. S. R. Ranganathan and the Growth of LIS Education in India. New Delhi: Concept Publishing Company, 2001.
- Sharma, Pandey S. K. Library and Information Science Education in India: A Historical Study. New Delhi: Metropolitan Book Co., 1992.
- University Grants Commission (UGC). Guidelines for Library and Information Science Education in India. New Delhi: UGC Publications, 2010.

4.17 EXERCISE

PART-1**A. Multiple Choice Questions:**

- 1. Who is considered the father of Library Science in India?**
 - a) W.A. Borden
 - b) S.R. Ranganathan
 - c) Melvil Dewey
 - d) Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III
- 2. Which university first introduced a formal course in Library Science in India?**
 - a) University of Delhi
 - b) Banaras Hindu University
 - c) University of Madras
 - d) Aligarh Muslim University
- 3. Which government body played a key role in expanding LIS education in post-independence India?**
 - a) NITI Aayog

NOTE

- b) Ministry of Culture
- c) University Grants Commission (UGC)
- d) National Digital Library of India

4. What was one of the major contributions of the Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III to LIS education in India?

- a) Establishing the first LIS research center
- b) Sending professionals abroad for library training
- c) Developing the Colon Classification System
- d) Writing the Five Laws of Library Science

5. Which institution is a major center for LIS research in India?

- a) Indian Institute of Science (IISc)
- b) Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC)
- c) Indira Gandhi National Open University (IGNOU)
- d) Indian Library Association (ILA)

Answer with Explanations:

1. **b)** S.R. Ranganathan - Dr. S.R. Ranganathan is widely regarded as the father of Library Science in India due to his contributions, including the Five Laws of Library Science and Colon Classification.
2. **c)** University of Madras - The University of Madras introduced the first formal Library Science course in 1929 under the guidance of Dr. S.R. Ranganathan.
3. **c)** University Grants Commission (UGC) - UGC played a crucial role in expanding LIS education by funding universities, developing curriculum standards, and supporting research initiatives.
4. **b)** Sending professionals abroad for library training - Maharaja Sayajirao Gaekwad III was one of the early patrons of LIS education and sent professionals abroad to learn modern library management practices.
5. **b)** Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) - The DRTC, founded by S.R. Ranganathan in Bangalore, is a leading institution for research in Library and Information Science.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. Describe the state of LIS education in India before independence.
2. How did LIS education evolve in post-independence India?

NOTE

3. What government initiatives have supported LIS education in India?
4. How has digital technology influenced LIS education in India?

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the growth of LIS education in India from the pre-independence era to the present, highlighting key milestones.
2. Analyze the challenges faced by LIS education in India and suggest possible solutions for improvement.
3. Examine the role of digital technologies and ICT in transforming LIS education in the 21st century.

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Evaluate the contributions of government policies and organizations like UGC and RRRLF in shaping LIS education in India.
2. Discuss the relevance of interdisciplinary approaches in modern LIS education, including subjects like artificial intelligence, data science, and knowledge management.
3. What role did Dr. S.R. Ranganathan play in the development of LIS education?



DR. C.V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY

Chhattisgarh, Bilaspur AN AISECT GROUP UNIVERSITY

Approved by : PCI | AICTE | NCTE | BCI | Member of : AIU | Joint Committee : (UGC | DEB | AICTE) | Recognized by : UGC | A NAAC Accredited University



DR. C. V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY (C.G.)

SLM FEEDBACK FORM

PROGRAMME : _____

COURSE : _____

BLOCK : _____

UNIT : _____

Dear Student,

While studying the units of this block, you may have found certain portions of the text difficult to comprehend. We wish to know your difficulties and suggestions, in order to improve the course. Therefore, we request you to fill up and send us the following questionnaire, which pertains to this block. If you find the space provided insufficient, kindly use a separate sheet.

Please mail to aisectcontent@aisect.org/ for online submission please scan QR code:

Questionnaire

1. Name : _____

2. Enrolment No. :

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3. How many hours did you need for studying the units? :

--

4. Please give your reactions to the following items based on your reading of the block:

Items	Excellent	Very Good	Good	Poor	Give specific Examples (If poor)
Presentation Quality					
Language and Style					
Illustrations					
Used (diagrams, tables, etc.)					
Conceptual Clarity					
Check Your Progress Questions					
Suggested Readings - OER					

5. Any other comments:

BLOCK – 2	LIS EDUCATION AND FOUNDATIONAL PRINCIPLES	77-112
Unit-5	LIS Education Development in Central India	79
Unit-6	Five Laws of Library Science and Their Implications in Library and Information Activities	95



Focuses on the development of Library and Information Science (LIS) education and its foundational principles, highlighting both regional growth and theoretical underpinnings. LIS education in Central India reflects the broader national trends of professionalization, curriculum development, and the expansion of library services. Institutions in this region have contributed significantly to training skilled professionals, promoting research, and implementing innovative practices in library management. Alongside this regional development, understanding the foundational principles, particularly the Five Laws of Library Science, is crucial. These laws, proposed by S.R. Ranganathan, guide the organization, accessibility, and effective use of information resources. Their application extends beyond traditional libraries to modern information centers, influencing service delivery, collection management, and user satisfaction. By linking educational development with these core principles, this block emphasizes how theory and practice together shape competent LIS professionals and support the growth of library and information services across India.

UNIT 5

LIS EDUCATION DEVELOPMENT IN CENTRAL INDIA

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 5.1 Introduction**
- 5.2 Objective**
- 5.3 LIS Education Development in Central India**
- 5.4 Historical Evolution of LIS Education in Central India**
- 5.5 Growth of LIS Schools and Universities in the Region**
- 5.6 Curriculum Development and Innovations in LIS Education**
- 5.7 Role of Government Policies in LIS Education Development**
- 5.8 Challenges in LIS Education Development in Central India**
- 5.9 Conclusion: Strengthening LIS Education in Central India**
- 5.10 Summary**
- 5.11 Glossary**
- 5.12 Answers to check your progress**
- 5.13 Suggested readings - OER**
- 5.14 Reference**
- 5.15 Exercise**

5.1 INTRODUCTION

The development of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in Central India has been shaped by the region's academic, infrastructural, and socio-economic landscape. States like Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, and Maharashtra have played a crucial role in fostering LIS education by establishing university programs, research centers, and library networks. The presence of LIS departments in institutions such as Dr. Harisingh Gour University and Rani Durgavati University has significantly contributed to the academic expansion of LIS in the region. These universities have tailored their curricula to address the unique challenges of Central India, including rural information access, resource constraints, and the need for trained library professionals. Furthermore, LIS education in this region has emphasized community engagement, ensuring that library services cater to diverse populations, including marginalized communities. The focus on traditional librarianship has gradually evolved with the

NOTE

integration of digital literacy, collection management, and user-oriented services, reflecting the broader trends in LIS education nationwide.

Over the years, the field of LIS in Central India has witnessed a growing emphasis on digital transformation, knowledge management, and ICT-based library services. Various government initiatives, such as the National Mission on Libraries, have played a vital role in strengthening public library infrastructure, which, in turn, has enhanced LIS education and practice. The incorporation of digital tools, e-resources, and automation in library services has expanded the scope of LIS curricula, preparing students for evolving professional roles. However, challenges such as inadequate funding, faculty shortages, and the persistent digital divide hinder the full realization of LIS education's potential in the region. Many rural institutions still struggle with limited access to technology, impacting students' ability to engage with modern LIS methodologies. Addressing these challenges requires a collaborative approach involving academic institutions, policymakers, and professional organizations. Strengthening research opportunities, fostering faculty development, and integrating emerging technologies into LIS curricula can significantly enhance the quality and impact of LIS education in Central India, ensuring its alignment with global advancements in the field.

5.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To explore the development of LIS education in Central India.
- To analyze the role of universities in promoting LIS programs.
- To assess the impact of government initiatives on regional LIS growth.
- To examine the challenges faced by LIS institutions in Central India.
- To propose strategies for strengthening LIS education in the region.

5.3 LIS EDUCATION DEVELOPMENT IN CENTRAL INDIA

Library and Information Science (LIS) education in Central India has evolved significantly, influenced by academic growth, regional development goals, and national information policies. Comprising states like Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, and parts of Maharashtra, the region has witnessed a steady rise in demand for trained library and information professionals due to growing academic institutions, public

NOTE

libraries, and the digitalization of knowledge resources. Recognizing this demand, various universities in Central India have established LIS departments offering diploma, undergraduate, postgraduate, and doctoral programs. These programs aim to create professionals capable of managing both traditional and digital library environments. Government initiatives like the National Mission on Libraries, Digital India, and literacy enhancement schemes have played a crucial role in boosting LIS education by providing funds, digitization infrastructure, and skill development. Practical exposure through internships, library automation training, and seminars has become a key PART-of the educational structure, allowing students to link theoretical frameworks with real-world applications.

Several prominent universities have significantly contributed to the advancement of LIS education in the region. Institutions such as Dr. Harisingh Gour Vishwavidyalaya (Sagar), Rani Durgavati Vishwavidyalaya (Jabalpur), Pt. Ravishankar Shukla University (Raipur), and Devi Ahilya Vishwavidyalaya (Indore) have long-standing LIS departments that serve as regional centers of excellence. These institutions have expanded their curricula from traditional cataloguing and classification to contemporary areas such as digital librarianship, knowledge management, information retrieval, and metadata applications. As technology continues to reshape the profession, Central Indian universities have integrated modern topics like artificial intelligence (AI) in libraries, machine learning for information services, open access initiatives, and digital archiving. The use of library management software such as SOUL, KOHA, and DSpace has become commonplace in teaching. Despite this progress, several constraints remain: outdated infrastructure in rural campuses, insufficient number of qualified faculty members, limited access to research grants, and uneven digital literacy among students. To bridge these gaps, collaborative frameworks involving universities, government bodies, and LIS professionals are essential for upgrading infrastructure, revising syllabi, and facilitating capacity building.

Looking ahead, the development of LIS education in Central India must align with global trends and future information needs. Emphasis should be placed on interdisciplinary education by blending LIS with data science, computer applications, and communication studies. This integration will empower students with hybrid skills suited for evolving job markets. Moreover, distance learning platforms such as those offered by IGNOU and state open universities should be expanded and enriched with interactive technologies to reach learners in remote areas. Workshops and continuing education programs, in partnership with the Indian Library Association (ILA), Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), and international bodies like IFLA and UNESCO, can help enhance faculty skills and promote global best practices.

NOTE

Additionally, encouraging research in emerging domains like digital humanities, blockchain for information security, and cloud-based library services will make LIS education more innovative and future-ready. Establishing regional centers of excellence and LIS research hubs can position Central India as a leading contributor to library and information science in the country. By adopting a comprehensive, inclusive, and technologically integrated approach, LIS education in Central India can evolve into a powerful engine for knowledge dissemination, digital empowerment, and lifelong learning.

5.4 HISTORICAL EVOLUTION OF LIS EDUCATION IN CENTRAL INDIA

The historical development of LIS education in Central India can be traced back to the mid-20th century when universities started offering formal courses in library science. The post-independence era saw a national push towards education and literacy, which led to the establishment of LIS programs in major universities. Libraries were considered crucial institutions for supporting higher education and research, necessitating a structured approach to training librarians. Early LIS education in the region was largely influenced by traditional librarianship, focusing on essential aspects such as cataloging, classification, and reference services. The growing need for well-trained librarians in academic and public libraries prompted universities to introduce specialized LIS programs, laying the foundation for future advancements in the discipline.

As research activities expanded and technology played an increasing role in information management, LIS education in Central India adapted to include modern subjects such as information retrieval, digital librarianship, and knowledge organization. Institutions such as Vikram University (Ujjain) and Pt. Ravishankar Shukla University (Raipur) were among the pioneers in expanding LIS education, offering programs that combined theoretical learning with practical applications. Over time, LIS curricula in Central India evolved to address contemporary challenges, incorporating global best practices and emerging trends in library science. Despite these developments, early LIS education in the region faced obstacles such as a lack of trained faculty, limited funding, and infrastructural constraints. Nevertheless, continued efforts by academic institutions and government initiatives have helped overcome some of these challenges, allowing LIS education in Central India to remain relevant in an increasingly digital era.

5.5 GROWTH OF LIS SCHOOLS AND UNIVERSITIES IN THE REGION

NOTE

The expansion of LIS education in Central India has been closely linked to the establishment of new universities and the introduction of specialized LIS departments. Recognizing the need for trained library professionals, several institutions introduced LIS programs at multiple levels, including diploma, bachelor's, master's, and doctoral degrees. This period saw the emergence of research centers dedicated to library and information science, enabling advanced studies in knowledge management, digital archiving, and bibliographic control. The role of higher education institutions in promoting LIS research and professional training has been instrumental in ensuring the steady growth of LIS education in the region.

Prominent universities such as Barkatullah University (Bhopal) and Guru Ghasidas University (Bilaspur) have significantly contributed to LIS education by offering well-structured academic programs and fostering research in the field. The introduction of distance education and online learning modules has further increased accessibility to LIS programs, allowing students from remote areas to pursue library science education. However, despite the expansion of LIS schools, several challenges persist, including a shortage of trained faculty, inadequate research funding, and limited access to advanced learning resources. Addressing these issues requires continued investment in LIS education, the recruitment of qualified faculty, and the development of industry-academia partnerships to ensure that LIS graduates are equipped with the skills needed to meet the evolving demands of the profession.

5.6 CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT AND INNOVATIONS IN LIS EDUCATION

The LIS curriculum in Central India has evolved significantly over the years, adapting to global trends and technological advancements in the field. Initially, LIS courses focused on traditional library operations such as cataloging, classification, reference services, and library administration. However, as digital transformation reshaped the information landscape, universities started incorporating modern subjects such as digital libraries, database management, and knowledge organization into their LIS curricula. These changes were aimed at equipping students with the necessary technical skills to manage electronic resources, implement digital archiving solutions, and engage in metadata management. The shift towards interdisciplinary learning has further enhanced LIS education, with new courses

NOTE

covering areas such as information ethics, artificial intelligence in libraries, and big data management.

In recent years, LIS education in Central India has also witnessed the adoption of innovative teaching methodologies, including online learning platforms, practical training through internships, and collaborations with industry professionals. Many universities have introduced specialized courses on emerging topics like open-access publishing, research data management, and digital content curation to prepare students for contemporary information service roles. The integration of ICT into LIS education has been a crucial factor in modernizing the curriculum, enabling students to gain hands-on experience with digital tools and technologies. However, challenges such as outdated course materials, limited access to cutting-edge research, and the need for more faculty training programs continue to hinder progress. To further enhance LIS education in Central India, universities must focus on continuous curriculum reform, faculty development, and partnerships with global institutions to ensure that students receive a well-rounded education that aligns with the latest advancements in the field.

5.7 ROLE OF GOVERNMENT POLICIES IN LIS EDUCATION DEVELOPMENT

Government policies have been a cornerstone in shaping the trajectory of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in Central India. The role of the government extends beyond mere policy formulation; it actively engages in setting academic standards, funding infrastructural development, and facilitating research initiatives that strengthen LIS education. The University Grants Commission (UGC) plays a crucial role in standardizing LIS curricula across universities, ensuring that students receive uniform and comprehensive training in information science. Additionally, national-level initiatives such as the National Knowledge Commission (NKC) and the National Mission on Libraries (NML) have provided direction for modernizing LIS education. These policies have encouraged the incorporation of digital technologies, automation, and interdisciplinary approaches into LIS curricula, aligning academic programs with the rapidly evolving information landscape. The introduction of digital repositories, open-access initiatives, and technology-driven library services has been instrumental in preparing LIS graduates for the digital era. Furthermore, policies aimed at faculty development, research grants, and international collaborations have enhanced the overall quality of LIS education in Central India.

At the state level, governments have initiated measures to strengthen LIS education by funding library infrastructure, supporting faculty

NOTE

training, and encouraging research projects. Programs such as the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) have played a pivotal role in improving public library systems and information centers, indirectly boosting LIS education. However, despite these positive strides, several challenges persist. Many LIS institutions in Central India still grapple with inadequate funding, which affects infrastructure development, faculty recruitment, and research output. While policies exist, their implementation often faces bureaucratic hurdles, slowing down the modernization process of LIS education. There is an urgent need for focused policy interventions that address these constraints by allocating more funds for technological advancements, revising outdated curricula, and increasing collaboration between LIS institutions and industry stakeholders. By strengthening policy frameworks and ensuring their effective execution, LIS education in Central India can continue to evolve, producing highly skilled professionals capable of navigating the complexities of the modern information ecosystem.

5.8 CHALLENGES IN LIS EDUCATION DEVELOPMENT IN CENTRAL INDIA

Despite significant progress in LIS education in Central India, several challenges continue to hinder its growth and effectiveness. One of the primary concerns is the lack of curriculum uniformity across different universities. While the UGC provides broad guidelines, many institutions develop their own course structures, leading to inconsistencies in the quality of education. Some universities continue to rely on outdated syllabi, focusing primarily on traditional librarianship skills such as cataloging, classification, and indexing, while neglecting emerging areas like digital curation, artificial intelligence in libraries, and knowledge management. As a result, graduates from different institutions may have varying levels of preparedness for contemporary library and information science roles. This disparity creates challenges in employment and professional mobility, as employers struggle to find LIS graduates with standardized competencies.

Another major challenge is the shortage of qualified faculty in LIS schools. The rapid evolution of LIS as an interdisciplinary field demands expertise in new-age subjects such as data science, information retrieval, metadata management, and digital archiving. However, most LIS institutions in Central India face difficulties in recruiting and retaining faculty members with specialized knowledge in these domains. Limited research funding and inadequate infrastructure further compound the issue, restricting faculty members from engaging in advanced research that could drive curriculum innovation.

NOTE

Additionally, a lack of industry-academia collaboration has led to a gap between theoretical knowledge and practical applications. LIS students often have limited exposure to real-world challenges in information management, affecting their professional preparedness. Addressing these challenges requires a multi-faceted approach, including curriculum modernization, enhanced faculty development programs, increased funding for LIS research, and stronger industry partnerships to equip graduates with the skills necessary to thrive in the digital information age.

**Activity 5.1**

Activity Title: Identifying LIS Institutions

Objective:

To become familiar with LIS educational institutions in Central India.

Materials Required:

- Internet/Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. Find the names of any three universities in Central India offering LIS programmes.
2. Write their names and locations.

Outcome:

The learner becomes aware of regional LIS education centres.

5.9 CONCLUSION: STRENGTHENING LIS EDUCATION IN CENTRAL INDIA

The development of Library and Information Science (LIS) education in Central India has witnessed a significant transformation, evolving from traditional library practices to a more technology-driven and research-oriented field. The integration of digital tools, online learning platforms, and interdisciplinary subjects has broadened the scope of LIS education, making it more relevant to contemporary information management needs. Universities have made considerable efforts to introduce new courses, research initiatives, and technological innovations to prepare students for the demands of the modern knowledge economy. However, challenges such as faculty shortages, curriculum inconsistencies, limited infrastructure, and inadequate research funding continue to hinder the progress of LIS education in the region. While government policies have provided a strong foundation for LIS development, their effective implementation remains a pressing issue. Addressing these challenges requires sustained efforts from

universities, policymakers, and industry stakeholders to ensure that LIS education remains relevant, competitive, and globally aligned.

Moving forward, the future of LIS education in Central India will depend on its ability to adapt to technological advancements, industry requirements, and global trends in information science. Strengthening industry-academia collaboration can provide students with valuable exposure to practical applications of LIS knowledge, enhancing their employability. Additionally, government funding and policy reforms should focus on expanding research opportunities, faculty training programs, and infrastructure development to support a more robust LIS education framework. Universities should also explore international collaborations and exchange programs to introduce students to global best practices in LIS education. By embracing technological innovations, interdisciplinary approaches, and policy-driven reforms, LIS education in Central India can continue to thrive, ensuring that graduates are well-equipped to meet the evolving challenges of the information and knowledge management landscape.

NOTE

☑ Check Your Progress 5.1

1. How has LIS education evolved in Central India over the years?

.....

.....

.....

2. What role have government policies played in shaping LIS education in Central India?

.....

.....

.....

3. What are the key challenges faced by LIS education in Central India, and how can they be addressed?

.....

.....

.....

5.10 SUMMARY

Library and Information Science (LIS) education in Central India has seen notable growth, adapting to the dynamic landscape of the information sector. Covering Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, and parts

NOTE

of Maharashtra, the region has been pivotal in advancing LIS education through prominent institutions like Dr. Harisingh Gour Vishwavidyalaya, Rani Durgavati Vishwavidyalaya, and Devi Ahilya Vishwavidyalaya. Initially focused on core areas such as cataloging, classification, and reference services, LIS curricula have expanded to include digital librarianship, knowledge management, and artificial intelligence in libraries, reflecting global trends. The introduction of ICT, MOOCs, and online education platforms has widened access, enabling students from remote areas to pursue LIS qualifications. Government bodies like the UGC, along with national initiatives such as the National Knowledge Commission and the National Mission on Libraries, have supported curriculum modernization and infrastructure development. Despite these advancements, challenges persist, including outdated syllabi, faculty shortages, limited research funding, and inconsistent standards across institutions. To address these gaps, a strategic approach involving curriculum reform, faculty development, increased investment, and industry-academia partnerships is essential. Research centers and new LIS schools have further enriched academic offerings, promoting innovation and interdisciplinary learning. The future of LIS education in Central India hinges on its capacity to integrate emerging technologies like big data analytics, digital archiving, and blockchain, while fostering global collaborations. With sustained government support and institutional reform, LIS education in the region can continue to produce skilled, future-ready information professionals who contribute meaningfully to India's knowledge economy.

5.11 GLOSSARY

- **Library and Information Science (LIS)** – A field of study that focuses on the management, organization, and dissemination of information in libraries and digital environments.
- **Cataloging** – The process of creating and maintaining records that provide descriptive information about library materials for easy retrieval.
- **Classification** – A system of organizing library resources using standard classification schemes such as the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) or Universal Decimal Classification (UDC).
- **Knowledge Management** – The process of capturing, storing, and sharing knowledge within an organization or library to improve information access and utilization.
- **Digital Librarianship** – The practice of managing digital collections, online databases, and electronic resources within a library setting.

NOTE

- **Information Retrieval** – The techniques used to search, locate, and access relevant information from digital or print collections.
- **Metadata Management** – The process of creating and maintaining structured information about digital resources to facilitate efficient information retrieval.
- **Artificial Intelligence in Libraries** – The application of AI technologies to automate cataloging, search functions, and recommendation systems in library services.
- **Big Data Analytics** – The use of data analysis techniques to interpret large datasets, often applied in digital libraries and knowledge management.
- **University Grants Commission (UGC)** – A statutory body in India responsible for maintaining higher education standards and providing funding to universities.
- **National Knowledge Commission (NKC)** – An advisory body in India established to improve knowledge institutions, including libraries and LIS education.
- **National Mission on Libraries (NML)** – A government initiative aimed at modernizing library infrastructure and promoting digital library services in India.
- **Distance Learning** – A mode of education that allows students to study LIS remotely using online platforms and resources.
- **MOOCs (Massive Open Online Courses)** – Online courses designed for large-scale participation, offering LIS education to a broader audience.
- **Industry-Academia Collaboration** – Partnerships between educational institutions and industry professionals to enhance practical learning and research opportunities in LIS.

5.12 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 5.1

1. LIS education in Central India has evolved from traditional librarianship, focused on cataloging and classification, to a modern, technology-driven discipline. Early LIS programs emphasized fundamental library operations, but with advancements in digital technologies, universities have integrated subjects such as artificial intelligence, knowledge management, and information retrieval. The expansion of LIS schools, government policies, and international collaborations have contributed to this evolution. However,

NOTE

challenges such as outdated curricula, faculty shortages, and infrastructure limitations persist, requiring continuous reforms and technological integration to keep LIS education relevant in the digital era.

2. Government policies have significantly influenced LIS education in Central India by providing funding, curriculum guidelines, and infrastructure support. The University Grants Commission (UGC) has played a key role in standardizing LIS curricula across universities. National initiatives such as the National Knowledge Commission (NKC) and the National Mission on Libraries (NML) have modernized LIS education through research funding and digital infrastructure development. Additionally, state governments have contributed by supporting faculty training programs and promoting public libraries, indirectly strengthening LIS education. Despite these efforts, more targeted policies are needed to address existing challenges in faculty development and research funding.
3. LIS education in Central India faces challenges such as inconsistent curricula, outdated course materials, faculty shortages, and inadequate research funding. Many universities struggle to keep pace with technological advancements in the field. To address these challenges, standardization of curricula across institutions is essential. Faculty training programs should be implemented to enhance expertise in digital librarianship and data science. Increased government and industry funding can improve research opportunities, while integrating digital learning methods such as MOOCs and ICT tools can modernize LIS education, making it more accessible and relevant to today's information landscape.

5.13 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3675	

5.14 REFERENCES

- Agrawal, A. "Library and Information Science Education in India: Challenges and Prospects." *Library Herald*, vol. 51, no. 4, 2013, pp. 389–405.

NOTE

- Ali, Amjad. Library and Information Science Education in India. EssEss Publications, 2004.
- Bhatt, R. K. "Evolution of LIS Education in India: Historical Perspective." *Annals of Library and Information Studies*, vol. 57, no. 2, 2010, pp. 109–117.
- Dasgupta, Arjun. Trends in Library and Information Science Education. Atlantic Publishers, 2017.
- Harinarayana, N. S., and P. R. Vasantha Raju. "Impact of ICT on LIS Education in India." *DESIDOC Journal of Library & Information Technology*, vol. 30, no. 6, 2010, pp. 55–60.
- Jaiswal, S. "Growth and Development of LIS Schools in Central India." *Journal of Library and Information Science*, vol. 45, no. 1, 2015, pp. 67–78.
- Kaur, Harpreet. "Challenges in LIS Curriculum Development in India." *International Journal of Information Research*, vol. 4, no. 2, 2014, pp. 89–102.
- Khan, Mohd. Shafique. Library and Information Science Education in India: A Historical Study. Kanishka Publishers, 2002.
- Kumar, Krishan. Library Education and Research in India. Vikas Publishing House, 2003.
- Majumdar, R. "Digital Technologies and LIS Education in India: A Case Study of Central India." *Library Management Today*, vol. 36, no. 2, 2019, pp. 95–112.
- Mittal, R. "Library and Information Science Education in India: Issues and Trends." *Library Philosophy and Practice*, 2011, pp. 1–11.
- Murthy, T. A. V. "The Role of UGC in LIS Education Development in India." *Annals of Library and Information Studies*, vol. 58, no. 3, 2011, pp. 234–245.
- Ramesh, C. "Government Policies and LIS Education in India." *Journal of Library Administration*, vol. 53, no. 4, 2017, pp. 290–306.
- Sharma, P. "Integration of ICT in LIS Curriculum in Central India: A Need for Change." *DESIDOC Journal of Library & Information Technology*, vol. 34, no. 5, 2018, pp. 78–91.
- Singh, S. P. Library and Information Science: Recent Developments and Future Trends. Concept Publishing Company, 2015.

NOTE

5.15 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

- 1. When was LIS education first introduced in major universities of Central India?**
 - a) 1920s
 - b) 1940s
 - c) 1950s
 - d) 1970s
- 2. Which university played a significant role in the early development of LIS education in Central India?**
 - a) Vikram University
 - b) Jadavpur University
 - c) Delhi University
 - d) Annamalai University
- 3. What is one major challenge faced by LIS education in Central India?**
 - a) Lack of interest in library science
 - b) Outdated curriculum
 - c) No job opportunities in LIS
 - d) Overfunding by the government
- 4. Which government initiative supports LIS education development in India?**
 - a) Digital India Initiative
 - b) National Knowledge Commission (NKC)
 - c) Start-up India
 - d) Skill India Program
- 5. How has digital technology impacted LIS education in Central India?**
 - a) Reduced the importance of library science
 - b) Led to the introduction of ICT-based courses
 - c) Made LIS education irrelevant
 - d) Increased reliance on traditional cataloging methods

Answer with Explanations:**NOTE**

1. **c) 1950s** - LIS education in Central India was established in the mid-20th century, influenced by post-independence educational reforms.
2. **a) Vikram University** - Vikram University (Ujjain) was among the institutions that contributed to the expansion of LIS education in Central India.
3. **b) Outdated curriculum** - Many LIS programs in Central India still follow traditional curricula that do not fully integrate modern technological advancements.
4. **b) National Knowledge Commission (NKC)** - NKC has played a crucial role in modernizing LIS education through policy recommendations and infrastructure development.
5. **b) Led to the introduction of ICT-based courses** - The integration of ICT in LIS education has introduced courses in digital archiving, knowledge management, and artificial intelligence applications in libraries.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. What role has government policy played in the development of LIS education in Central India?
2. How has the curriculum of LIS education evolved over the years in Central India?
3. What are the primary challenges faced by LIS schools in Central India?
4. How has the integration of digital technology influenced LIS education?

PART-2**C. Long answer type question (200 words)**

1. Discuss the historical evolution of LIS education in Central India.
2. Analyze the impact of digital technologies on LIS education in Central India.
3. Examine the major challenges and future prospects of LIS education in Central India.

NOTE

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Evaluate the role of government policies and initiatives in shaping LIS education in Central India.
2. Explain the significance of industry-academia collaboration in LIS education.
3. What steps can be taken to improve LIS education in Central India?

UNIT 6

FIVE LAWS OF LIBRARY SCIENCE AND THEIR IMPLICATIONS IN LIBRARY AND INFORMATION ACTIVITIES

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 6.1 Introduction
- 6.2 Objective
- 6.3 The Five Laws of Library Science
- 6.4 First Law: Books are for Use
- 6.5 Second Law: Every Reader His/Her Book
- 6.6 Third Law: Every Book Its Reader
- 6.7 Fourth Law: Save the Time of the Reader
- 6.8 Fifth Law: The Library is a Growing Organism
- 6.9 Implications of the Five Laws in Public Libraries
- 6.10 Implications of the Five Laws in Academic Libraries
- 6.11 Future Implications of the Five Laws in the Digital Age
- 6.12 Summary
- 6.13 Glossary
- 6.14 Answers to check your progress
- 6.15 Suggested readings - OER
- 6.16 Reference
- 6.17 Exercise

6.1 INTRODUCTION

Dr. S. R. Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science, formulated in 1931, continue to serve as the philosophical cornerstone of library operations, even in the digital era. These five principles—(1) Books are for use, (2) Every reader his or her book, (3) Every book its reader, (4) Save the time of the reader, and (5) The library is a growing organism—establish a user-centric framework for efficient knowledge access and service delivery. Though originally designed for traditional print libraries, their relevance has expanded to encompass digital libraries, online repositories, and advanced information systems. The first law now encompasses initiatives like digitization, open-access platforms,

NOTE

and remote access services that ensure availability beyond physical boundaries. The second and third laws, which advocate for meeting user needs and connecting every resource to a potential user, are reflected in AI-driven personalization, metadata optimization, and semantic tagging in digital environments. The fourth law, focused on saving users' time, finds modern expression through machine learning algorithms, automated cataloging, and real-time search enhancements that streamline access. The fifth law's emphasis on growth underscores the continual adaptation of libraries through the inclusion of multimedia resources, evolving user interfaces, and integration of emerging technologies. As libraries grapple with challenges such as information overload, algorithmic bias, and the digital divide, Ranganathan's principles offer a framework for ethical and inclusive practice. From implementing AI-driven assistive tools and multilingual interfaces to employing big data for user behavior analysis, libraries today are dynamic hubs of learning and accessibility. By reinterpreting the Five Laws in light of current trends, library professionals ensure that core values—accessibility, resource optimization, and user empowerment—remain central. These laws not only uphold the enduring mission of libraries as facilitators of knowledge but also guide their transformation into smart, adaptive, and inclusive knowledge ecosystems fit for the 21st century and beyond.

6.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To analyse the principles of the Five Laws of Library Science.
- To analyze their implications in modern library practices.
- To explore the role of technology in implementing these laws.
- To assess the challenges in applying these principles.
- To evaluate future developments in library science based on these laws.

6.3 THE FIVE LAWS OF LIBRARY SCIENCE

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan formulated the Five Laws of Library Science in 1931, establishing the fundamental principles that continue to shape library operations, collection development, and user engagement. These five laws—(1) Books are for use, (2) Every reader his/her book, (3) Every book its reader, (4) Save the time of the reader, and (5) The library is a growing organism—serve as a philosophical foundation for library management. Each law addresses a crucial aspect of library services, ensuring that libraries function as dynamic institutions rather than static book repositories. Ranganathan's principles emphasize accessibility, inclusivity, and efficiency in library services, making them

relevant across different eras, including the digital age. These laws have profoundly influenced the organization and accessibility of physical libraries, as well as modern digital information repositories. By embracing these principles, libraries ensure that information resources are optimally utilized, benefiting diverse user groups.

The relevance of these laws extends beyond traditional library settings and into digital and technological advancements in information science. As technology continues to revolutionize the way information is accessed and disseminated, these principles provide a foundation for user-centered services. Digital libraries, online databases, and e-learning platforms all adhere to these laws in their approach to organizing, retrieving, and sharing information. In this section, each law will be explored in detail, with a focus on its application in contemporary library practices, its role in bridging knowledge gaps, and its significance in fostering an inclusive and efficient information ecosystem.

NOTE

6.4 FIRST LAW: BOOKS ARE FOR USE

Ranganathan's First Law, "Books are for use," emphasizes that library collections exist primarily to be accessed by users rather than merely preserved. Historically, libraries focused on protecting books from damage or theft, often restricting access by keeping books in closed stacks. While preservation remains important, this law underscores the necessity of making knowledge accessible through user-friendly lending policies, open-access shelving, and efficient cataloging systems. The principle of maximizing access has led to significant transformations in library design, such as the development of well-organized reading spaces, digital lending services, and community engagement initiatives that encourage library use. Many libraries now employ flexible borrowing policies, extended operating hours, and automated circulation systems to ensure that books serve their intended purpose: to be read and utilized by users.

In the digital age, this law extends beyond physical books to include e-books, digital archives, and multimedia resources. Libraries must ensure seamless access to digital materials through robust content management systems and user-friendly interfaces. Remote access services, digital rights management (DRM) tools, and open-access publishing initiatives have further facilitated the principle of "books are for use." Academic institutions integrate digital repositories and institutional archives to promote knowledge-sharing and global accessibility. Public libraries also enhance access through initiatives like interlibrary loan programs and mobile library services. By embracing technological advancements, libraries continue to fulfill the First Law by making knowledge more accessible and useful to all.

NOTE

6.5 SECOND LAW: EVERY READER HIS/HER BOOK

The Second Law, "Every reader his/her book," highlights the necessity of catering to the diverse needs of library users. Libraries serve individuals from different backgrounds, interests, and literacy levels, necessitating collections that reflect a broad spectrum of topics, languages, and formats. This law promotes the democratization of knowledge, ensuring that resources are selected based on user demand rather than arbitrary preferences. Public libraries, academic institutions, and special libraries curate collections that address the educational, professional, and recreational needs of their respective communities. This principle encourages libraries to implement acquisition policies based on readership analysis, feedback mechanisms, and emerging knowledge trends. Furthermore, libraries adopt inclusive strategies such as multilingual collections, adaptive technologies for differently-abled users, and culturally diverse materials to meet the specific needs of different users.

In modern library science, this law is reinforced through personalized recommendation systems, AI-driven search engines, and adaptive learning platforms. Digital libraries leverage data analytics to assess user preferences and recommend relevant materials. Libraries also enhance accessibility by offering resources in various formats, such as audiobooks for visually impaired users and large-print editions for elderly readers. Additionally, libraries conduct outreach programs to ensure that marginalized communities have access to relevant resources. Academic libraries develop subject-specific collections to support research and coursework, while public libraries provide career development and skill-enhancement materials. Through these strategies, libraries uphold the Second Law by ensuring that every reader finds resources that align with their needs and interests.

6.6 THIRD LAW: EVERY BOOK ITS READER

The Third Law, "Every book its reader," underscores the importance of proper resource organization, discoverability, and user engagement. A library may possess a vast collection, but if its materials remain undiscovered or underutilized, their value is diminished. This law promotes the implementation of effective cataloging systems, classification schemes, and metadata tagging to ensure that resources reach their intended audience. Traditional libraries use subject classification methods, card catalogs, and reference services to bridge the gap between books and readers. Digital libraries further enhance discoverability through advanced search algorithms, metadata enrichment, and indexing strategies. Without proper organization,

books may remain hidden within a collection, defeating the purpose of acquiring them in the first place.

Modern libraries utilize search engine optimization (SEO), artificial intelligence (AI)-driven recommendations, and dynamic indexing techniques to help users locate materials relevant to their interests. Many digital libraries provide personalized search features, AI-assisted keyword tagging, and machine learning-based retrieval systems to enhance book discoverability. Libraries also employ promotional techniques such as book displays, themed reading programs, and interactive digital interfaces to highlight valuable but underutilized resources. Additionally, initiatives such as author talks, book fairs, and community reading events foster engagement with library materials. By applying these strategies, libraries ensure that every book finds its rightful reader, fulfilling its purpose as a source of knowledge, inspiration, and learning.

NOTE

6.7 FOURTH LAW: SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER

This law underlines efficiency in information retrieval and library services. Users should not struggle to find resources due to poor organization, outdated cataloguing methods, or inefficient service models. Libraries must focus on user-friendly interfaces, structured classification systems, and trained staff to assist users effectively. A well-organized library saves valuable time for users by ensuring that resources are easily accessible, whether in print or digital format. Library professionals must consistently evaluate their systems and services to identify bottlenecks and implement solutions that enhance the user experience.

Digital advancements, such as AI-powered chatbots, automated cataloguing, federated search systems, and RFID-based checkouts, directly support this principle. Libraries also optimize physical layouts, signage, and digital interfaces to minimize search time. The development of one-stop search platforms, like WorldCat or Google Scholar, further exemplifies this law's relevance in modern information access. Efficient metadata tagging, personalized recommendation systems, and real-time availability updates contribute to a seamless information-seeking process, reducing frustration and enhancing research productivity.

6.8 FIFTH LAW: THE LIBRARY IS A GROWING ORGANISM

Ranganathan's final law envisions libraries as dynamic entities that must continuously evolve. Libraries should not remain static; they must

NOTE

expand collections, upgrade technology, and adapt to changing user needs. This growth can be physical (expanding collections, branches and infrastructure) or digital (implementing e-resources, online databases, and digital repositories). The expansion is not merely about quantity but also about relevance—libraries must ensure that their materials and services reflect the latest developments in knowledge and technology to remain valuable to their users.

Modern applications include the integration of cloud computing, artificial intelligence, big data analytics, and linked data frameworks into library systems. Libraries also engage in continuous professional development (CPD) for librarians, ensuring that staff members remain equipped with evolving skills to manage and disseminate knowledge effectively. By fostering a culture of lifelong learning and adaptation, libraries sustain their role as essential knowledge hubs, bridging the past, present, and future of information access.

6.9 IMPLICATIONS OF THE FIVE LAWS IN PUBLIC LIBRARIES

Public libraries serve as vital institutions that provide knowledge and resources to diverse communities, making Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science highly relevant in their operations. The First Law, "Books are for use," underscores the importance of ensuring that library resources are not merely stored but actively utilized by the public. To achieve this, public libraries must develop inclusive and well-balanced collections that cater to the varied interests and informational needs of their patrons. This includes acquiring materials in multiple languages, ensuring accessibility for individuals with disabilities, and incorporating various formats such as audiobooks, e-books, and large-print editions. The Second Law, "Every reader his book," highlights the necessity of curating resources that reflect the interests and needs of all segments of society. Public libraries cater to a wide range of users, including children, students, professionals, senior citizens, and marginalized communities. Consequently, they must continuously assess and update their collections to remain relevant and inclusive. Community engagement programs such as book clubs, storytelling sessions, and literacy workshops further enhance the reach and impact of public libraries, ensuring that diverse user groups find materials that suit their needs.

The advent of digital technologies has significantly transformed public library services, aligning them with the Third and Fourth Laws, which emphasize access and efficiency. Mobile library services, bookmobiles, and outreach programs help extend library services to rural and underserved areas, ensuring that geography is not a barrier to knowledge access. Many public libraries have embraced digital literacy

initiatives, teaching essential technology skills to patrons who may be unfamiliar with online resources. AI-powered recommendation engines, interactive learning platforms, and open-access repositories improve the discoverability of relevant information, helping users save time while finding what they need. Programs such as "One Nation One Library Card" in India and similar initiatives globally exemplify the Fifth Law, which advocates for the continuous evolution of libraries. These initiatives interconnect public library networks, allowing users seamless access to resources across different institutions. Ultimately, public libraries remain at the forefront of fostering lifelong learning, promoting literacy, and ensuring democratic access to information, all while adhering to Ranganathan's enduring principles.

NOTE

6.10 IMPLICATIONS OF THE FIVE LAWS IN ACADEMIC LIBRARIES

Academic libraries serve as critical support systems for students, researchers, and faculty members, making Ranganathan's Five Laws integral to their development and operations. The First Law, which emphasizes the utility of books, is particularly relevant in academic settings where resources must be easily accessible and tailored to scholarly needs. Universities and colleges invest heavily in both physical and digital collections, ensuring that students and researchers can access the latest academic publications, peer-reviewed journals, and specialized databases. The Second Law, advocating that every reader should find a suitable book, highlights the need for libraries to offer diverse materials across disciplines. Subject-specific repositories, multilingual research materials, and specialized databases help cater to students from various academic backgrounds. Additionally, interlibrary loan services and institutional memberships in digital consortia ensure that users can access resources beyond their home institution's collection, further strengthening the principle of personalized access.

The Third and Fourth Laws emphasize the need for libraries to facilitate convenient access to knowledge while saving users' time. Many academic libraries now incorporate AI-driven search tools, such as Semantic Scholar, Scopus AI, and Google Scholar, to optimize literature discovery. Citation management software, automated indexing, and cloud-based research collaboration platforms streamline academic workflows, allowing researchers to efficiently manage vast amounts of information. Open-access publishing initiatives and institutional repositories promote the free exchange of knowledge, enabling students and faculty members to contribute and retrieve scholarly works without financial constraints. As interdisciplinary research becomes more prominent, academic libraries are adapting by providing advanced data visualization tools, collaborative virtual workspaces, and real-time

NOTE

research support. The Fifth Law, which encourages libraries to evolve with changing needs, is evident in the growing integration of digital learning environments, AI-driven metadata organization, and virtual reality tools for immersive learning. By aligning their services with these principles, academic libraries continue to play a pivotal role in fostering innovation, critical thinking, and academic excellence in an increasingly digital world.

6.11 FUTURE IMPLICATIONS OF THE FIVE LAWS IN THE DIGITAL AGE

As the field of library science advances, Ranganathan's Five Laws remain a foundational framework guiding the evolution of library services in the digital age. The First Law, "Books are for use," extends beyond physical materials to encompass digital content, including e-books, online journals, and multimedia learning resources. Libraries are investing in cloud-based content distribution systems and digital lending models that provide users with seamless access to knowledge anytime and anywhere. The integration of blockchain technology in libraries is emerging as a solution for secure digital lending and copyright management, ensuring the authenticity and ownership of digital resources. The Second Law, which emphasizes personalized access to books, is now reflected in AI-powered recommendation systems that tailor content based on users' reading habits and preferences. Virtual reality (VR) and augmented reality (AR) applications are being integrated into library services, offering immersive educational experiences that make learning more interactive and engaging.

The increasing complexity of information landscapes makes the Third and Fourth Laws even more relevant, as libraries must ensure accessibility while optimizing information retrieval processes. AI-driven automation is revolutionizing cataloging and metadata organization, significantly reducing the time required to classify and retrieve resources. Libraries are also adopting knowledge graphs and semantic web technologies to enhance search capabilities, allowing users to find relevant materials with greater precision. However, the digital age also presents challenges, including cybersecurity threats, digital piracy, and information overload. Libraries must implement robust data protection policies and digital literacy programs to equip users with the skills needed to navigate and critically assess information in an era of misinformation. The Fifth Law underscores the necessity for continuous adaptation, pushing libraries to embrace innovation while staying true to their mission of democratizing knowledge. By integrating cutting-edge technologies and fostering a user-centric approach, libraries will

continue to serve as essential hubs of learning, research, and cultural preservation in the future.

NOTE

Activity 6.1

Activity Title: Applying the Five Laws

Objective:

To relate Ranganathan's Five Laws to library practices.

Materials Required:

- Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. Select any one of the Five Laws.
2. Write one practical example of how it is applied in a library.

Outcome:

The learner understands the practical relevance of the Five Laws.

Check Your Progress 6.1

1. How does the First Law, "Books are for use," influence modern library practices?

.....

.....

.....

2. Why is the Second Law, "Every reader his/her book," essential for inclusive library services?

.....

.....

.....

3. In what ways does the Fourth Law, "Save the time of the reader," impact digital library systems?

.....

.....

.....

NOTE

6.12 SUMMARY

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science serve as timeless principles that continue to shape the theory and practice of library and information services in both traditional and digital contexts. The First Law, "Books are for use," encourages libraries to prioritize accessibility, leading to innovations such as digital lending, open-access repositories, and user-friendly catalog interfaces. The Second Law, "Every reader his/her book," emphasizes the need to cater to diverse user demographics, now realized through personalized content delivery, AI-based recommendation systems, multilingual databases, and inclusive services for users with disabilities. The Third Law, "Every book its reader," reinforces the significance of discoverability, achieved through metadata enrichment, robust indexing, and advanced search tools powered by artificial intelligence. The Fourth Law, "Save the time of the reader," underlines operational efficiency, prompting libraries to adopt RFID technology, federated search engines, AI chatbots, and intuitive library layouts that optimize user experience and resource retrieval. The Fifth Law, "The library is a growing organism," envisions libraries as dynamic institutions that continuously evolve with societal and technological changes. Today, this is evident in the adoption of cloud-based systems, integration of big data analytics, AI-enhanced cataloging, and the exploration of cutting-edge tools like blockchain and virtual reality. These applications ensure libraries remain relevant, responsive, and user-focused. Overall, Ranganathan's laws not only provide a philosophical foundation but also serve as a strategic framework for libraries navigating the challenges of the digital age, guiding innovations in information access, digital transformation, and lifelong learning in an increasingly complex information ecosystem.

6.13 GLOSSARY

- **Accessibility** – The ease with which library users can reach and utilize resources.
- **Artificial Intelligence (AI)** – The use of machine learning and automated systems in libraries for cataloging, recommendations, and information retrieval.
- **Bibliographic Organization** – The structured arrangement of library materials to ensure efficient access.
- **Cataloging** – The process of classifying and indexing books and digital resources for systematic retrieval.
- **Cloud Computing** – The use of internet-based servers to store and manage digital library resources.

NOTE

- **Digital Rights Management (DRM)** – Technologies used to control access to digital books and resources.
- **E-Books** – Digital versions of books that can be accessed online or downloaded.
- **Federated Search** – A system that allows users to search multiple library databases simultaneously.
- **Information Retrieval** – The process of searching for and obtaining relevant information from a collection of resources.
- **Interlibrary Loan** – A service that enables users to borrow books from other libraries within a network.
- **Metadata** – Descriptive information about books or digital resources that aids in discovery and organization.
- **Open-Access Resources** – Free digital materials available to users without subscription barriers.
- **Personalized Recommendations** – AI-driven suggestions tailored to users based on their search history and preferences.
- **RFID (Radio Frequency Identification)** – A technology used in libraries for automated checkouts and tracking of materials.
- **Semantic Search** – AI-based search algorithms that understand the meaning of queries to provide more relevant results.

6.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 6.1

1. Ranganathan's First Law emphasizes accessibility over mere book preservation, shaping modern library policies that prioritize usability. Libraries implement open shelving, user-friendly lending policies, and digital access to ensure that books and e-resources are readily available. This law extends to digital libraries, which incorporate e-books, open-access materials, and remote access features. Modern libraries also use interlibrary loans and flexible borrowing options to enhance availability. By applying this law, libraries evolve into dynamic knowledge centers, ensuring that resources are actively used rather than locked away for safekeeping.
2. The Second Law ensures that libraries cater to diverse user needs, promoting equitable access to knowledge. It influences collection development by encouraging a wide range of materials, including multilingual books, audiobooks for visually impaired users, and specialized resources for different academic disciplines. Modern

NOTE

libraries use AI-driven recommendation systems to personalize reading suggestions, ensuring that users find relevant content. Outreach programs, community surveys, and adaptive technology further align with this law, making libraries inclusive spaces that serve all users effectively.

3. The Fourth Law underscores efficiency in information retrieval, leading to innovations in digital library systems. Libraries integrate federated search engines, AI-powered chatbots, and metadata-rich catalogs to streamline searches. Automated classification systems, RFID-based self-checkout, and user-friendly interfaces minimize the time users spend locating materials. Additionally, cloud-based repositories and digital search platforms like Google Scholar allow instant access to scholarly resources, ensuring that users can efficiently retrieve relevant information with minimal effort.

6.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3676	

6.16 REFERENCES

- Ranganathan, S. R. The Five Laws of Library Science. Madras Library Association, 1931.
- Ranganathan, S. R. Library Manual for Library Science Students. Asia Publishing House, 1960.
- Satija, M. P. The Five Laws of Library Science: Their Relevance in the Digital Age. EssEss Publications, 2019.
- Seadle, Michael. "The Five Laws of Library Science in the Digital Age." Library Hi Tech, vol. 24, no. 4, 2006, pp. 580-582.
- Gorman, Michael. Our Enduring Values: Librarianship in the 21st Century. ALA Editions, 2000.
- Lancaster, F. Wilfrid. If You Want to Evaluate Your Library.... University of Illinois Press, 1988.
- Kaur, Tajinder, and P. K. Mahapatra. Library and Information Science: Trends and Research. Concept Publishing, 2005.
- Buckland, Michael. "Library Services in Theory and Context." Library Quarterly, vol. 56, no. 3, 1986, pp. 284-300.

NOTE

- Spink, Amanda, and Charles Cole. New Directions in Human Information Behavior. Springer, 2006.
- Bhattacharyya, Goutam. Library Management in Digital Environment. EssEss Publications, 2011.
- Hjørland, Birger. "The Foundation of Library and Information Science." Knowledge Organization, vol. 39, no. 2, 2012, pp. 86-97.
- Wilson, Patrick. Two Kinds of Power: An Essay on Bibliographic Control. University of California Press, 1968.
- Noh, Younghee. Digital Library Usability: A Theoretical Approach. Elsevier, 2018.

6.17 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

1. Who formulated the Five Laws of Library Science?

- a) Melvil Dewey
- b) S. R. Ranganathan
- c) Michael Gorman
- d) ShiyaliRamamrita

2. What is the core message of the First Law: "Books are for Use"?

- a) Libraries should focus on preserving books
- b) Books should be locked away for safety
- c) Books should be easily accessible to readers
- d) Libraries should focus only on digital resources

3. How does the Second Law, "Every Reader His/Her Book," impact library collection management?

- a) It encourages libraries to store rare books only
- b) It supports developing collections based on user needs
- c) It promotes the removal of old books from the library
- d) It limits access to books based on user demographics

4. Which modern library tool best supports the Third Law, "Every Book Its Reader"?

- a) RFID-based book security systems
- b) AI-driven recommendation systems

NOTE

- c) Manual card cataloging
- d) Book digitization projects

5. What technological advancement best exemplifies the Fourth Law, "Save the Time of the Reader"?

- a) Physical card catalogs
- b) AI-powered search engines
- c) Restrictive book access policies
- d) Manual book borrowing systems

Answer with Explanations:

- 1. b) S. R. Ranganathan** - Dr. S. R. Ranganathan, an Indian librarian, developed these laws in 1931 to serve as fundamental principles guiding library operations and services.
- 2. c) Books should be easily accessible to readers** - This law emphasizes that libraries should prioritize accessibility, ensuring that books are available for reading rather than being stored or restricted.
- 3. b) It supports developing collections based on user needs** - This law ensures libraries cater to a diverse audience, developing collections that reflect users' varying interests and literacy levels.
- 4. b) AI-driven recommendation systems** - AI and metadata-based recommendation systems help match books with the right readers by suggesting relevant materials based on their interests.
- 5. b) AI-powered search engines** - AI-powered search and discovery tools reduce the time users spend searching for books, improving efficiency in library services.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. How does the First Law of Library Science apply to digital libraries?
2. What role does artificial intelligence play in implementing the Second Law in modern libraries?
3. How do classification systems support the Third Law, "Every Book Its Reader"?
4. Explain one technological advancement that aligns with the Fourth Law, "Save the Time of the Reader."

PART-2

NOTE

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the relevance of Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science in the digital age, providing examples from modern libraries.
2. How do public and academic libraries apply the Five Laws differently? Provide detailed comparisons with examples.
3. Explain how emerging technologies like AI, blockchain, and cloud computing can enhance the implementation of the Five Laws of Library Science.

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Analyze the impact of the Five Laws on modern information retrieval systems and digital knowledge management platforms.
2. Examine how libraries in developing countries can use the Five Laws to bridge the digital divide and enhance information access.
3. Why is continuous professional development (CPD) important in maintaining the Fifth Law of Library Science?



DR. C.V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY

Chhattisgarh, Bilaspur AN AISECT GROUP UNIVERSITY

Approved by : PCI | AICTE | NCTE | BCI | Member of : AIU | Joint Committee : (UGC | DEB | AICTE) | Recognized by : UGC | A NAAC Accredited University



DR. C. V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY (C.G.)

SLM FEEDBACK FORM

PROGRAMME : _____

COURSE : _____

BLOCK : _____

UNIT : _____

Dear Student,

While studying the units of this block, you may have found certain portions of the text difficult to comprehend. We wish to know your difficulties and suggestions, in order to improve the course. Therefore, we request you to fill up and send us the following questionnaire, which pertains to this block. If you find the space provided insufficient, kindly use a separate sheet.

Please mail to aisectcontent@aisect.org/ for online submission please scan QR code:

Questionnaire

1. Name : _____

2. Enrolment No. :

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3. How many hours did you need for studying the units? :

--

4. Please give your reactions to the following items based on your reading of the block:

Items	Excellent	Very Good	Good	Poor	Give specific Examples (If poor)
Presentation Quality					
Language and Style					
Illustrations					
Used (diagrams, tables, etc.)					
Conceptual Clarity					
Check Your Progress Questions					
Suggested Readings - OER					

5. Any other comments:

BLOCK – 3	LIBRARIES AND THEIR ROLE IN SOCIETY	113-166
UNIT-7	Role of the Library in Modern Society	115
UNIT-8	Role of Libraries in Education (Formal and Non-Formal)	131
UNIT-9	Publicity and Extension Activities in Libraries	149



Explores the pivotal role libraries play in modern society, emphasizing their function as centers of knowledge, education, and community engagement. Libraries today are not merely repositories of books but dynamic institutions that support lifelong learning, literacy, and the dissemination of information across diverse populations. They serve formal education by supporting schools, colleges, and universities, while also fostering non-formal education through programs, workshops, and awareness initiatives. Publicity and extension activities are essential in bridging the gap between library resources and the community, ensuring wider accessibility and encouraging active participation. By facilitating access to information, promoting cultural enrichment, and supporting social development, libraries contribute significantly to an informed and empowered society. Understanding these roles highlights the importance of well-managed library services and the need for innovative strategies to enhance their relevance and impact in today's rapidly changing information landscape.

UNIT 7

ROLE OF THE LIBRARY IN MODERN SOCIETY

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 7.1 Introduction**
- 7.2 Objective**
- 7.3 The Role of the Library in Modern Society**
- 7.4 Libraries as Knowledge and Information Hubs**
- 7.5 Libraries and Lifelong Learning**
- 7.6 Libraries as Community and Cultural Centers**
- 7.7 Libraries and Digital Inclusion**
- 7.8 Libraries and Scientific Research Support**
- 7.9 Libraries and Intellectual Freedom**
- 7.10 Challenges Faced by Libraries in Modern Society**
- 7.11 Future Directions for Libraries in Society**
- 7.12 Summary**
- 7.13 Glossary**
- 7.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 7.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 7.16 Reference**
- 7.17 Exercise**

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Libraries play an indispensable role in modern society by serving as centers for knowledge dissemination, lifelong learning, and community development. In today's information-driven era, libraries have evolved beyond their traditional role of book repositories and now function as hubs of digital access, research facilitation, and knowledge management. The rise of technology has transformed libraries into hybrid models that integrate physical collections with vast digital databases, allowing users to access information anytime and anywhere. Public libraries, academic institutions, and research centers worldwide have expanded their services to include electronic resources, online catalogs, and open-access materials. In addition to supporting education and literacy, libraries contribute to social inclusion by providing resources to marginalized communities, ensuring that knowledge is accessible to all, regardless of socioeconomic status. In

NOTE

modern society, libraries also serve as cultural institutions that preserve historical records, rare manuscripts, and indigenous knowledge. They act as platforms for intellectual exchange by hosting seminars, workshops, and discussions on contemporary issues. Libraries foster critical thinking and information literacy, equipping individuals with skills to navigate the overwhelming amount of digital information available today. Furthermore, libraries play a significant role in democracy by offering free access to government publications, legal documents, and public records, empowering citizens with the information needed to make informed decisions. As the world faces challenges such as misinformation, digital divides, and information overload, libraries continue to evolve by adopting emerging technologies like artificial intelligence, blockchain, and big data analytics. The future of libraries lies in their ability to adapt, innovate, and provide inclusive access to knowledge resources for the betterment of society.

7.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To examine the evolving role of libraries in modern society.
- To analyse how libraries contribute to lifelong learning and digital inclusion.
- To analyze the impact of technological advancements on library services.
- To explore the role of libraries in fostering intellectual freedom and democratic participation.
- To assess future challenges and opportunities for libraries in a digital world.

7.3 THE ROLE OF THE LIBRARY IN MODERN SOCIETY

Libraries have played an essential role in the intellectual and cultural development of human civilization, evolving from mere repositories of books to comprehensive information hubs that cater to diverse societal needs. In modern society, libraries serve as inclusive institutions that facilitate lifelong learning, knowledge dissemination, and community engagement. As centers of intellectual freedom, libraries provide access to information across various disciplines and media formats, including print, digital, and multimedia resources. The transition from traditional libraries to digital and hybrid models has enabled libraries to offer broader access to knowledge through online public access catalogs (OPACs), institutional repositories, and open-access databases.

NOTE

Libraries now serve as collaborative spaces that encourage research, innovation, and social interaction while also addressing challenges such as the digital divide and misinformation. They promote equitable knowledge distribution by providing resources for marginalized communities, offering free internet access, and conducting digital literacy programs. Public libraries, in particular, play a crucial role in fostering reading habits, supporting literacy initiatives, and preserving local and global cultural heritage.

As society becomes increasingly information-driven, the role of libraries continues to expand to meet the evolving needs of their users. Libraries are no longer confined to physical spaces; they operate as virtual institutions offering digital collections, online learning modules, and remote research assistance. The rise of artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning, and big data analytics has significantly impacted library services, allowing for more personalized and efficient information retrieval systems. Academic libraries support scientific research by providing access to peer-reviewed journals, citation tools, and open-access platforms that ensure knowledge dissemination beyond institutional boundaries. Moreover, libraries serve as advocacy centers for intellectual freedom and privacy rights, combating censorship and misinformation through fact-checking initiatives and media literacy programs. However, despite their indispensable role, libraries face challenges such as budget constraints, declining physical readership, and competition from commercial digital information providers. The future of libraries lies in their ability to integrate emerging technologies, enhance user engagement, and reinforce their commitment to knowledge accessibility and democratic participation in an increasingly digital society.

7.4 LIBRARIES AS KNOWLEDGE AND INFORMATION HUBS

Libraries have always been at the forefront of knowledge preservation and dissemination, ensuring that generations of scholars, students, and general readers have access to valuable information. Historically, libraries housed manuscripts, scrolls, and printed books that served as the primary sources of knowledge. However, with the rise of digital technologies, libraries have transformed into dynamic knowledge hubs that offer a vast range of information services beyond traditional book lending. Modern libraries now provide access to digital databases, e-journals, multimedia resources, and open-access research platforms, ensuring that information is more widely available. The implementation of Online Public Access Catalogues (OPACs) has revolutionized how users interact with library resources, allowing them to search and retrieve information remotely. Institutional repositories and digital

NOTE

archives have further facilitated the storage and dissemination of scholarly materials, making research findings and academic publications easily accessible to a global audience. Libraries also act as gateways to information by collaborating with universities, research institutions, and government agencies to ensure the seamless sharing of knowledge resources.

The modern role of libraries as information hubs extends beyond academia to include the general public, businesses, and policymakers who require access to reliable and verified information. Public libraries, in particular, cater to the information needs of diverse populations by offering resources in multiple formats, languages, and accessibility-friendly modes for people with disabilities. Furthermore, libraries serve as incubators for new ideas, providing spaces where individuals can engage in research, innovation, and intellectual discourse. Many libraries have introduced maker spaces equipped with 3D printers, coding labs, and virtual reality (VR) tools to foster creativity and technological experimentation. Additionally, libraries play a crucial role in combating misinformation and disinformation by offering media literacy programs that teach users how to critically evaluate sources and verify facts. As information landscapes continue to evolve, libraries must remain adaptive by embracing digital advancements, expanding their resource offerings, and strengthening their role as vital institutions for knowledge exchange and intellectual engagement.

7.5 LIBRARIES AND LIFELONG LEARNING

Lifelong learning has become a critical component of modern society, with individuals continuously acquiring new skills and knowledge to adapt to changing professional and personal needs. Libraries play an essential role in facilitating lifelong learning by providing resources for self-directed education, formal coursework, and skill development. Public, academic, and special libraries offer materials that cater to learners of all ages, from young children developing literacy skills to professionals engaging in career advancement. Through digital platforms, libraries now provide access to e-books, online courses, and interactive learning modules that support a variety of educational needs. Institutions such as the National Digital Library of India (NDLI), Coursera, and Khan Academy partner with libraries to expand educational opportunities. Libraries also host workshops and training sessions on subjects such as digital literacy, financial education, language acquisition, and professional certifications. By fostering an environment of continuous learning, libraries help individuals improve their knowledge base, develop new competencies, and stay relevant in a rapidly evolving world.

NOTE

Beyond formal education, libraries serve as centers for informal and community-driven learning. Many libraries provide access to educational software, virtual learning environments, and collaborative workspaces where users can engage in peer-to-peer learning. Programs such as coding boot camps, job readiness workshops, and entrepreneurship training have gained popularity in libraries worldwide. Libraries also promote inclusivity in learning by offering resources in multiple languages and formats, catering to individuals with disabilities through assistive technologies such as screen readers and audiobooks. Moreover, they serve as safe spaces for marginalized communities, enabling access to education for individuals who may not have access to traditional schooling. By integrating technology with conventional library services, libraries continue to enhance their role as fundamental institutions for lifelong learning, supporting knowledge acquisition at every stage of life and empowering individuals to reach their full potential.

7.6 LIBRARIES AS COMMUNITY AND CULTURAL CENTERS

Libraries have long served as cultural and social hubs, fostering intellectual and artistic expression while bringing diverse communities together. Beyond being repositories of books, modern libraries act as venues for cultural programs, exhibitions, and community engagement activities that promote social cohesion.

Public libraries frequently host storytelling sessions, book clubs, poetry readings, and literary festivals that encourage creative expression and knowledge sharing. They also play an important role in preserving and promoting local culture, archiving regional literature, folk traditions, and oral histories. Many libraries work with cultural organizations and historians to digitize rare manuscripts and indigenous knowledge, ensuring their preservation for future generations. By curating exhibitions on history, arts, and sciences, libraries contribute to the cultural enrichment of society, making knowledge accessible and engaging for all.

In addition to their cultural contributions, libraries provide essential services that strengthen communities by addressing social issues and fostering inclusivity. They serve as safe spaces where individuals from diverse backgrounds can engage in discussions, access legal aid resources, and participate in civic initiatives. Libraries support underserved populations, including immigrants, refugees, and individuals with disabilities, by offering tailored resources such as multilingual collections, citizenship workshops, and accessibility tools. Many libraries also provide essential public services such as tax assistance, health information, and technology training, ensuring that

NOTE

community members have the resources needed to navigate daily life. Through such initiatives, libraries reinforce their position as democratic institutions that promote equality, cultural appreciation, and social integration. In an era where digital connectivity is reshaping societal interactions, libraries continue to play a crucial role in bringing people together, fostering dialogue, and creating spaces for shared learning and cultural exchange.

7.7 LIBRARIES AND DIGITAL INCLUSION

Digital inclusion is one of the most pressing challenges in modern society, as access to technology and digital literacy significantly impact an individual's ability to participate in education, employment, and civic life. Libraries play a critical role in bridging the digital divide by providing free or affordable internet access, computer literacy programs, and digital skills training.

Public and academic libraries increasingly offer Wi-Fi-enabled workspaces, lending programs for tablets and laptops, and educational workshops on cybersecurity, online research techniques, and coding. Initiatives such as the Digital Public Library of America (DPLA) and the National Digital Library of India (NDLI) further expand access to digital resources, ensuring that even those in remote or economically disadvantaged areas can benefit from online education and information services. Libraries also help users navigate e-government services, applying for jobs, and using digital financial tools, empowering individuals to participate fully in the digital economy.

In addition to providing digital access, libraries support digital literacy by equipping users with the skills needed to critically evaluate online content and use digital tools effectively. Many libraries offer specialized training programs for seniors, students, and professionals, ensuring that individuals of all backgrounds have the knowledge to engage with technology safely and productively. AI-driven research assistance, virtual reality learning labs, and 3D printing services are increasingly becoming PART-of library offerings, ensuring that users are exposed to emerging technologies. Special programs are designed for people with disabilities, incorporating assistive technologies such as speech-to-text software, braille e-readers, and adaptive computer workstations. As society becomes more reliant on digital infrastructure, libraries must continue to adapt, ensuring that no community is left behind in the digital transformation and that everyone has equal access to the tools necessary for success in a technology-driven world.

7.8 LIBRARIES AND SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH SUPPORT

NOTE

Libraries play a crucial role in supporting scientific research by providing access to scholarly publications, research databases, and advanced information retrieval tools. Academic and research libraries serve as knowledge hubs where students, scholars, and professionals can explore peer-reviewed journals, dissertations, conference proceedings, and grey literature. With the rise of digital repositories, institutions such as arXiv, PubMed, and ResearchGate have revolutionized the accessibility of scientific knowledge. Libraries facilitate interlibrary loan services, ensuring that researchers can access resources beyond their institutional holdings. Additionally, citation management tools like Zotero, EndNote, and Mendeley help researchers organize their references efficiently, streamlining the research process. Libraries also offer research consultation services, assisting scholars in literature reviews, data analysis, and research methodology selection, thereby playing an active role in shaping high-quality academic output.

Beyond providing access to information, libraries contribute to the dissemination and preservation of scientific knowledge. Many institutions now have institutional repositories that archive faculty research, student theses, and open-access publications, ensuring that valuable academic work remains available to future generations. Open-access initiatives, such as the Directory of Open Access Journals (DOAJ) and Plan S, advocate for unrestricted access to publicly funded research, a movement strongly supported by libraries. Libraries also play a key role in promoting research ethics by offering plagiarism detection tools like Turnitin and iThenticate, ensuring academic integrity. As scientific research becomes increasingly data-driven, libraries are investing in research data management (RDM) services, helping researchers curate, store, and share large datasets. In this evolving landscape, libraries remain indispensable partners in academic and scientific research, fostering innovation and collaboration across disciplines.

7.9 LIBRARIES AND INTELLECTUAL FREEDOM

Libraries are fundamental to upholding intellectual freedom by ensuring access to diverse perspectives, unbiased information, and uncensored knowledge. As guardians of democratic values, libraries champion the right to read, research, and access information without political, social, or economic barriers. Intellectual freedom is a core principle of library ethics, as outlined in statements such as the American Library Association's (ALA) Library Bill of Rights. Libraries

NOTE

provide access to materials that represent a broad spectrum of ideas, even those that may be controversial or unpopular. By curating diverse collections and resisting censorship pressures, libraries protect the public's right to make informed decisions. They also play a vital role in countering misinformation by providing credible sources, media literacy training, and fact-checking resources to help users critically evaluate information.

In the digital age, libraries extend intellectual freedom to the online sphere by advocating for open access, privacy rights, and net neutrality. Many libraries offer digital literacy workshops that teach users how to navigate online resources responsibly while maintaining their digital privacy. Libraries also provide access to independent journalism, government documents, and historical archives, ensuring that the public remains informed about key social and political issues. Efforts to safeguard user data have become increasingly important, with libraries implementing privacy-conscious search engines, encrypted communication tools, and anonymous browsing options. By actively defending intellectual freedom, libraries empower individuals to think critically, engage in informed discussions, and participate meaningfully in democratic processes. As challenges such as book bans, algorithmic bias, and surveillance threats emerge, libraries must continue advocating for knowledge as a universal right.

7.10 CHALLENGES FACED BY LIBRARIES IN MODERN SOCIETY

Despite their invaluable contributions, libraries face numerous challenges in adapting to the rapidly evolving information landscape. One of the most pressing issues is financial constraints, as many libraries struggle with budget cuts and declining public funding. With increasing demand for digital resources, libraries must invest in expensive subscriptions to academic journals, e-books, and database services, often stretching limited financial resources. Additionally, competition from commercial information providers, such as Google Scholar and Amazon Kindle, has changed user expectations, requiring libraries to modernize their services to remain relevant. Declining readership and reduced foot traffic in physical library spaces have also prompted concerns about the future role of traditional libraries. To address these issues, libraries must develop sustainable funding models, seek grants, and explore partnerships with private organizations and governmental agencies to secure long-term financial stability.

Another significant challenge is the need to keep up with technological advancements while ensuring digital inclusivity. While many libraries have successfully integrated artificial intelligence (AI), big data, and

NOTE

cloud computing into their operations, not all institutions have the resources to do so. Smaller libraries, particularly those in developing regions, face infrastructure limitations that hinder the adoption of modern technologies. Additionally, cybersecurity threats, such as data breaches and digital piracy, pose risks to library users and the integrity of online resources. Misinformation and fake news further complicate the role of libraries, requiring them to invest in media literacy programs and fact-checking initiatives. To overcome these challenges, libraries must continuously adapt to technological changes, implement robust cybersecurity measures, and advocate for policies that support equitable access to information. By addressing these barriers proactively, libraries can continue to serve as essential pillars of education and knowledge dissemination.

7.11 FUTURE DIRECTIONS FOR LIBRARIES IN SOCIETY

The future of libraries lies in their ability to embrace innovation while staying true to their core mission of knowledge accessibility. Emerging trends suggest that libraries will increasingly integrate smart technology, artificial intelligence, and blockchain-based digital rights management to enhance their services. AI-driven recommendation engines, similar to those used by commercial platforms like Netflix and Amazon, will personalize user experiences in library catalogues, making information retrieval more efficient. Virtual and augmented reality (VR/AR) will create immersive learning environments, allowing users to explore historical archives, conduct virtual lab experiments, and engage in interactive storytelling. Furthermore, the implementation of blockchain technology in digital lending services will ensure secure and transparent access to copyrighted materials, benefiting both libraries and content creators. By leveraging these advancements, libraries will evolve into high-tech knowledge hubs that cater to diverse learning needs.

Beyond technological transformation, libraries will continue to expand their role as community centers, fostering collaboration, cultural engagement, and social development. The concept of smart libraries, which integrate automated systems, IoT (Internet of Things) devices, and data analytics, will redefine user experiences, making library services more efficient and user-friendly. Libraries will also play a crucial role in sustainability initiatives, promoting green infrastructure, eco-friendly practices, and digital alternatives to paper-based resources. As global challenges such as misinformation, climate change, and digital equity persist, libraries must adapt by offering targeted educational programs, civic engagement opportunities, and access to reliable data sources. The fundamental principles of library

NOTE

science, rooted in Ranganathan's Five Laws, will continue to guide libraries in their mission to provide knowledge to all. By embracing change and innovation while upholding their foundational values, libraries will remain indispensable institutions in an increasingly knowledge-driven society.

 Activity 7.1

Activity Title: Observing Modern Library Services

Objective:

To identify the services provided by modern libraries.

Materials Required:

- Library visit/Internet
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. Visit a nearby library or its website.
2. List any five services offered by the library.

Outcome:

The learner recognizes the changing role of libraries in society.

 Check Your Progress 7.1

1. How have libraries transformed into knowledge and information hubs in modern society?

.....

.....

.....

2. Why is the Second Law, "Every reader his/her book," essential for inclusive library services?

.....

.....

.....

3. What are the major challenges faced by libraries in modern society?

.....

.....

.....

7.12 SUMMARY

Libraries have transformed from traditional repositories of books into dynamic hubs of knowledge dissemination, lifelong learning, and digital empowerment. In contemporary society, they play a pivotal role in supporting intellectual freedom, cultural exchange, and digital equity by offering inclusive access to information across diverse formats—print, digital, and multimedia. With the rise of digital technology, libraries have become hybrid spaces, blending physical collections with remote-access tools like Online Public Access Catalogues (OPACs), digital repositories, and open-access platforms that extend their reach globally. They support academic and scientific advancement through access to peer-reviewed journals, research databases, and citation management tools, while upholding the principles of intellectual freedom and combating misinformation. Libraries are equally vital in promoting lifelong learning by offering free access to digital courses, skill-building workshops, and platforms like Coursera and Khan Academy. They serve as community anchors by preserving cultural heritage, archiving oral histories, and fostering awareness of indigenous knowledge systems. Moreover, they act as bridges over the digital divide by providing free internet, digital literacy training, and exposure to emerging technologies such as AI-powered research tools, coding bootcamps, and makerspaces. Despite financial challenges and evolving user expectations, libraries are adapting by leveraging cloud computing, blockchain for secure digital rights management, and automation to improve efficiency and digital preservation. As they continue to evolve, future libraries will integrate smart technologies, personalized learning environments, and data-driven services to sustain their critical role as accessible, inclusive, and innovative institutions in the knowledge economy of the digital age.

7.13 GLOSSARY

- **Knowledge Hub** – A central place where information is gathered, organized, and made accessible for learning and research.
- **Digital Inclusion** – Efforts to ensure all individuals have access to technology, the internet, and digital literacy skills.
- **Open-Access Platform** – A system that provides unrestricted access to research papers, books, and educational resources.
- **Online Public Access Catalogue (OPAC)** – A digital database that allows users to search a library's collection remotely.
- **Lifelong Learning** – The continuous pursuit of education and skill development beyond formal schooling.

NOTE

NOTE

- **Community Outreach Program** – Library initiatives aimed at engaging and supporting different community groups through events and resources.
- **Multimedia Resources** – Digital content such as videos, audio files, and interactive learning tools available in libraries.
- **Plagiarism Detection Tool** – Software that checks for copied or unoriginal content in research and academic writing.
- **Digital Literacy** – The ability to use digital tools effectively, including internet navigation, online security, and information evaluation.
- **Citation Management Tool** – Software that helps researchers organize references and format citations for academic work.
- **Institutional Repository** – A digital archive where universities store and provide access to research and academic materials.
- **Interdisciplinary Research** – A study that integrates knowledge from multiple fields to solve complex problems.
- **Blockchain-based Digital Rights Management** – A secure system that helps protect digital assets and prevent unauthorized access to digital content.
- **AI-powered Knowledge Discovery** – The use of artificial intelligence to help users find relevant information quickly and efficiently.
- **Smart Libraries** – Libraries that use automation, IoT (Internet of Things), and AI to enhance user experiences and optimize services.

7.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 7.1

1. Libraries have transitioned from traditional book repositories to dynamic knowledge hubs by integrating both physical and digital resources. They provide access to a vast range of information, including digital databases, e-books, multimedia content, and research repositories. Online Public Access Catalogues (OPACs) and open-access platforms have enabled remote access to knowledge, breaking geographical barriers. Libraries collaborate with universities, research institutions, and global archives to ensure the free flow of scholarly information. This transformation enhances research capabilities, supports academic work, and democratizes knowledge access, making libraries essential in an increasingly digital and knowledge-driven world.

NOTE

2. Libraries contribute to digital inclusion by providing free internet access, digital literacy programs, and technology training to underserved communities. They bridge the digital divide by offering computer access, coding workshops, and online learning platforms. Libraries also promote lifelong learning by supporting self-paced education, offering e-books, and hosting skill-development workshops. Many libraries partner with educational platforms like Coursera and Khan Academy to provide free courses. By making educational resources accessible to people of all ages, libraries empower individuals to continuously learn and develop new skills in an ever-evolving digital landscape.
3. Libraries encounter various challenges, including budget constraints, declining physical readership, and competition from commercial digital platforms. The shift toward digital resources require significant technological investments, which many libraries struggle to afford. Additionally, misinformation and digital security threats pose new challenges for librarians in curating credible and unbiased information. Evolving user behaviors, where people prefer quick online searches over in-depth research, also impact library engagement. To remain relevant, libraries must adopt innovative funding strategies, implement AI-driven search tools, and develop policies that ensure equitable and secure access to information.

7.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectionline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3677	

7.16 REFERENCES

- American Library Association. The State of America's Libraries Report 2023. ALA, 2023.
- Bhardwaj, Raj Kumar. Library and Information Science in the Digital Age. Springer, 2020.
- Breeding, Marshall. "The Future of Library Technology." Library Technology Reports, vol. 56, no. 4, 2020, pp. 1-34.
- Burke, John J. The Neal-Schuman Library Technology Companion. ALA Neal-Schuman, 2020.

NOTE

- Cox, Andrew M. "The Value of Academic Libraries in the Digital Age." *Journal of Librarianship and Information Science*, vol. 52, no. 3, 2020, pp. 675-685.
- Gorman, Michael. *Our Enduring Values: Librarianship in the 21st Century*. ALA Editions, 2015.
- IFLA. *Global Vision Report Summary*. International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions, 2018.
- Janes, Joseph. *Library 2035: Imagining the Next Generation of Libraries*. Rowman & Littlefield, 2023.
- Koren, Marian. *Libraries as Learning Hubs*. EBLIDA, 2021.
- Martell, Charles. "The Transformation of Academic Libraries in the Digital Age." *College & Research Libraries*, vol. 82, no. 2, 2021, pp. 147-163.
- OCLC. *The Digital Shift: Libraries, Learning, and the Future*. OCLC Research, 2020.
- Pesch, Oliver, and Lorcan Dempsey. "Libraries and the Open Access Movement." *Information Services & Use*, vol. 40, no. 3, 2020, pp. 235-250.
- Ranganathan, S. R. *The Five Laws of Library Science*. 2nd ed., Asia Publishing House, 1957.
- Ross, Lyman. *Libraries, Society, and the Digital Age*. MIT Press, 2022.
- UNESCO. *Public Libraries: Engines for Sustainable Development*. UNESCO, 2019.

7.17 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

1. **What is one of the primary roles of libraries in modern society?**
 - a) Selling books to generate revenue
 - b) Providing access to knowledge and information
 - c) Restricting access to online information
 - d) Limiting the number of books a user can read
2. **How do libraries contribute to lifelong learning?**
 - a) By providing only academic books

NOTE

- b) By organizing self-paced learning programs and digital literacy workshops
- c) By allowing only students to access educational content
- d) By restricting access to online courses

3. Which of the following is an emerging trend in library technology?

- a) AI-driven knowledge discovery
- b) Removal of all digital resources
- c) Replacing libraries with bookstores
- d) Banning social interaction in libraries

4. How do libraries support digital inclusion?

- a) By providing free or low-cost internet access
- b) By restricting digital access to only selected users
- c) By eliminating all printed books
- d) By charging high fees for online resources

5. What is one of the biggest challenges faced by libraries today?

- a) Lack of demand for digital resources
- b) Budget constraints and sustainability issues
- c) Decreasing importance of digital inclusion
- d) Overabundance of print materials

Answer with Explanations:

1. b) **Providing access to knowledge and information** - Libraries serve as knowledge and information hubs, offering access to print, digital, and multimedia resources to ensure equitable knowledge dissemination.
2. b) **By organizing self-paced learning programs and digital literacy workshops** - Libraries offer various educational programs, such as skill development workshops, online courses, and e-learning resources, to facilitate lifelong learning.
3. a) **AI-driven knowledge discovery** - AI and machine learning are being integrated into library systems to improve search capabilities, personalize user experiences, and enhance knowledge accessibility.
4. a) **By providing free or low-cost internet access** - Libraries bridge the digital divide by offering internet access, computers, and digital literacy programs to underserved communities.

NOTE

- 5. b) Budget constraints and sustainability issues** - Libraries face funding challenges, making it difficult to invest in emerging technologies, maintain digital resources, and meet evolving user needs.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. How have libraries evolved in the digital age?
2. What role do libraries play in promoting digital literacy?
3. Why is intellectual freedom important in libraries?
4. How do libraries contribute to community engagement?

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the role of libraries in bridging the digital divide.
2. Explain how libraries support scientific research and knowledge dissemination.
3. What challenges do libraries face in the modern era, and how can they overcome them?

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. How do libraries contribute to lifelong learning, and what initiatives support this role?
2. Discuss the future of libraries in the digital age.
3. What are some technological advancements shaping the future of libraries?

UNIT 8

ROLE OF LIBRARIES IN EDUCATION (FORMAL AND NON- FORMAL)

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 8.1 Introduction**
- 8.2 Objective**
- 8.3 Libraries in Education (Formal and Non-Formal)**
- 8.4 Libraries as Learning Resource Centers for Formal Education**
- 8.5 Libraries in Non-Formal and Lifelong Learning**
- 8.6 Promoting Digital and Information Literacy**
- 8.7 Supporting Research and Innovation**
- 8.8 Libraries and Literacy Development**
- 8.9 Libraries as Inclusive Spaces for Marginalized Communities**
- 8.10 Challenges Faced by Libraries in Supporting Education**
- 8.11 Future Directions for Libraries in Education**
- 8.12 Conclusion**
- 8.13 Summary**
- 8.14 Glossary**
- 8.15 Answers to check your progress**
- 8.16 Suggested readings - OER**
- 8.17 Reference**
- 8.18 Exercise**

8.1 INTRODUCTION

Libraries have always been integral to education, supporting both formal and non-formal learning. In formal education, academic libraries in schools, colleges, and universities provide students and researchers with textbooks, journals, and digital resources essential for academic success. These libraries serve as research support centers, assisting students in developing critical thinking and information literacy skills. University libraries also facilitate scholarly communication by providing access to academic databases, repositories, and e-learning platforms. With the advancement of online education and distance learning, libraries have expanded their services by offering virtual reference

NOTE

assistance, digital repositories, and open educational resources (OERs). These innovations help bridge educational gaps and ensure equitable access to knowledge, especially for remote learners. Beyond formal education, libraries play a crucial role in non-formal and lifelong learning. Public libraries serve as community education centers where individuals can acquire new skills, engage in self-study, and participate in literacy programs. Many libraries conduct workshops, career counseling sessions, and digital literacy training to equip users with essential competencies for personal and professional growth. Libraries also collaborate with NGOs and government agencies to support adult education, vocational training, and inclusive learning programs. With the growing need for continuous education in a fast-changing world, libraries have redefined their roles by integrating digital platforms, multimedia learning, and specialized knowledge resources to cater to diverse learners. The future of library services in education lies in embracing technology, fostering collaboration, and ensuring accessibility for all learners, regardless of their background.

8.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To explore the role of libraries in supporting formal education.
- To analyze how libraries facilitate non-formal and lifelong learning.
- To analyse the impact of digital resources on library-based education.
- To assess the contribution of libraries to distance learning and skill development.
- To evaluate future trends in library services for education.

**8.3 THE ROLE OF LIBRARIES IN EDUCATION
(FORMAL AND NON-FORMAL)**

Libraries play a vital role in both formal and non-formal education by serving as inclusive, knowledge-rich environments that support intellectual development, critical inquiry, and lifelong learning. In formal educational settings—such as schools, colleges, and universities—libraries are integral components of the academic infrastructure. They provide students and educators with access to curated collections of textbooks, scholarly journals, reference materials, and digital resources that supplement classroom instruction. Academic libraries are particularly important for research and project-based learning, offering both physical and digital access to information that

NOTE

supports higher-order thinking and academic rigor. They often provide subject-specific resources, reading lists, bibliographic instruction, and research support, thus becoming essential in developing students' information literacy skills. Meanwhile, teacher-librarians and information professionals play a pedagogical role by guiding learners in effective information-seeking behaviors, source evaluation, and ethical use of information. The library becomes a collaborative space where formal learning is extended, deepened, and personalized beyond the traditional classroom structure.

In the realm of non-formal education, libraries—especially public and community libraries—function as democratic access points for knowledge and skills development. They support vocational training, language learning, literacy programs, and digital inclusion initiatives. Many public libraries host workshops, author talks, career counseling sessions, and educational programming for all age groups. This non-formal dimension is crucial in empowering underserved communities, enabling reskilling for employment, and supporting adult learners and marginalized populations. Mobile libraries and digital outreach services also help reach rural or remote populations, ensuring no learner is left behind. Moreover, libraries serve as safe, inclusive environments where people can learn at their own pace and based on their individual interests, free from academic pressure or rigid structures. They also help foster a culture of reading, stimulate curiosity, and promote civic engagement, all of which contribute to the broader goals of education in society.

As education becomes increasingly digitized and diversified, the role of libraries continues to evolve to meet contemporary challenges and opportunities. Technological advancements have allowed libraries to offer e-learning platforms, open educational resources (OER), digital archives, and cloud-based learning environments. Through partnerships with educational institutions and government agencies, libraries are integrating virtual reference services, online catalogues, video tutorials, and MOOCs (Massive Open Online Courses) to extend learning beyond traditional boundaries. Furthermore, libraries have started incorporating makerspaces, STEM labs, and digital media centers to support experiential and participatory learning. These innovations help learners develop critical 21st-century skills such as creativity, problem-solving, collaboration, and digital literacy. Whether in formal institutions or non-formal settings, libraries play a pivotal role in ensuring that education remains accessible, relevant, and empowering for all. As engines of educational equity, innovation, and community engagement, libraries will continue to serve as indispensable partners in achieving global education goals in the knowledge-driven world.

NOTE**8.4 LIBRARIES AS LEARNING RESOURCE CENTERS
FOR FORMAL EDUCATION**

In formal education systems, libraries serve as indispensable learning resource centers that support academic success, enhance instructional delivery, and nurture independent thinking. Whether in schools, colleges, or universities, libraries provide curated collections aligned with curricular goals, including textbooks, reference works, research journals, multimedia content, and electronic resources. These materials support students in understanding course content more deeply and aid educators in preparing lessons enriched with authoritative information. Libraries promote academic literacy by helping students locate, analyze, and synthesize information from multiple sources. Through access to specialized resources such as citation manuals, style guides, and plagiarism detection software, they reinforce academic integrity and research ethics. Trained library professionals play a pivotal role in guiding students to develop critical thinking and effective research habits, empowering them to become autonomous learners capable of evaluating and applying knowledge in complex academic scenarios.

Modern libraries have expanded their functions beyond traditional roles to become interactive, technology-driven learning environments. Equipped with digital infrastructure, they provide access to global academic databases like JSTOR, Scopus, ProQuest, and India's National Digital Library (NDLI), ensuring learners can retrieve scholarly material from any location. Many academic libraries offer blended services such as e-learning modules, virtual reference assistance, remote access to e-books, and collaborative learning zones. They also support instructional design by partnering with faculty to create integrated learning experiences, such as course-specific research guides, flipped classroom resources, and information literacy workshops. These services help bridge the gap between curriculum content and applied learning, enabling students to engage with knowledge more meaningfully. Libraries thereby contribute to cultivating lifelong learning habits and preparing students for research-intensive careers.

Moreover, academic libraries provide physical and intellectual spaces that stimulate curiosity, collaboration, and creativity. Many institutions have adopted learning commons models, where libraries house group study areas, digital media labs, makerspaces, and smart classrooms to encourage hands-on learning and innovation. They play a key role in academic orientation programs, introducing students to available resources and training them in using library tools effectively. Furthermore, they organize seminars, author talks, and exhibitions that complement formal education by exposing learners to diverse

NOTE

perspectives and real-world issues. In increasingly interdisciplinary and digitally oriented learning environments, libraries serve as cross-functional platforms that connect students, faculty, and researchers. As academic demands evolve, libraries will continue to innovate—integrating artificial intelligence, data analytics, and immersive technologies like VR and AR—to enhance research capabilities and deepen educational engagement. Thus, libraries are not just support services but core educational entities within formal institutions, vital to academic excellence and holistic learning.

8.5 LIBRARIES IN NON-FORMAL AND LIFELONG LEARNING

Libraries play a crucial role in supporting non-formal and lifelong learning by providing inclusive, accessible, and community-centered educational opportunities. Unlike formal institutions bound by curricula and structured timelines, libraries cater to self-paced learners, individuals pursuing alternative education routes, and those re-entering education after gaps. Public libraries, community libraries, and knowledge centers serve as gateways to learning for all age groups, offering an array of resources—books, periodicals, e-books, and online tutorials—that promote reading habits, critical thinking, and intellectual engagement. These libraries often host storytelling sessions, cultural events, and intergenerational programs, making them vibrant centers of informal education. Especially in societies with educational disparities, libraries democratize learning by extending educational resources to those excluded from formal education systems, including the unemployed, differently-abled, or economically disadvantaged.

One of the most impactful aspects of non-formal education through libraries is their ability to adapt to local needs and foster skill development. Libraries frequently offer practical workshops such as computer literacy, resume writing, basic financial literacy, entrepreneurship training, and foreign language instruction. Coding clubs for youth, digital safety sessions for parents, and technology orientation for the elderly are examples of initiatives that empower individuals without requiring institutional enrollment. In rural and underserved areas, mobile library vans, community reading corners, and solar-powered digital kiosks bring learning to remote populations. These services reduce geographical and economic barriers to education and promote community resilience. Partnerships with NGOs, local governments, and international development agencies allow libraries to scale such programs, transforming them into proactive agents of social upliftment and inclusive learning ecosystems.

Furthermore, libraries support lifelong learning by cultivating environments where continuous personal and professional development

NOTE

is encouraged. They serve as safe, neutral spaces for exploration, reflection, and intellectual dialogue, often tailored to the community's socio-cultural context. Senior citizens use library resources to explore hobbies, keep up with current events, or understand technology, while job seekers and entrepreneurs benefit from access to market data, career counseling, and business development materials. Many libraries now offer access to MOOCs (Massive Open Online Courses) through platforms like Coursera, edX, and SWAYAM, providing learners with globally recognized skills and certifications. Libraries also play an essential role in preserving local culture and knowledge, offering resources in regional languages and archiving oral histories. By integrating digital tools, offering flexible learning paths, and fostering community partnerships, libraries strengthen the foundation of non-formal education and lifelong learning. In doing so, they prepare citizens to navigate an ever-evolving knowledge economy and actively participate in democratic and cultural life.

8.6 PROMOTING DIGITAL AND INFORMATION LITERACY

In an age of information overload, libraries play a crucial role in teaching digital and information literacy skills. They guide users in searching, evaluating, and responsibly using information, helping them distinguish credible sources from misinformation. Librarians provide workshops on internet safety, fact-checking, and critical media consumption, equipping users with the skills to navigate the digital landscape. These efforts are particularly important in an era where misinformation and fake news can easily mislead individuals, affecting decision-making in education, health, and civic participation.

Academic libraries offer access to online journals, digital archives, and open-access repositories, while public libraries provide internet access and digital devices to bridge the digital divide. Many libraries have launched programs that teach individuals how to use digital tools effectively, such as online learning platforms, e-government services, and data management systems. Libraries also collaborate with educational institutions and technology providers to enhance digital learning experiences. By fostering digital and information literacy, libraries ensure that everyone, regardless of background or location, can participate in the global knowledge economy and make informed decisions in their personal and professional lives.

8.7 SUPPORTING RESEARCH AND INNOVATION

Libraries are indispensable for academic and scientific research, providing researchers with specialized collections, historical archives,

NOTE

and access to scholarly databases. University libraries support research projects, thesis writing, and collaborative research initiatives, helping students and faculty stay updated with the latest findings in their fields. Libraries serve as knowledge hubs where scholars can access peer-reviewed literature, statistical data, and specialized reference materials essential for conducting high-quality research.

Research support services include literature reviews, citation management tools, and data repositories. Many libraries offer reference management software like EndNote and Zotero to help researchers organize and cite their sources efficiently. Libraries also facilitate knowledge dissemination through institutional repositories and open-access publishing, ensuring that research outputs are available to the broader academic community and the public. Additionally, libraries encourage interdisciplinary collaboration by providing spaces for scholarly discussions, hosting research symposiums, and supporting innovation-driven projects. By fostering a culture of inquiry and discovery, libraries contribute significantly to the advancement of knowledge and technological progress in society.

8.8 LIBRARIES AND LITERACY DEVELOPMENT

Libraries have long been at the forefront of literacy initiatives, serving as critical institutions that foster reading habits, language development, and overall literacy growth. By offering reading programs, adult literacy classes, and language learning sessions, libraries create a strong foundation for individuals of all ages to develop essential literacy skills. These programs play a significant role in combating illiteracy, particularly in underserved communities, where access to educational resources may be limited. Public and academic libraries often implement structured literacy initiatives such as summer reading programs for children, storytime sessions for early childhood literacy development, and workshops for struggling adult learners. These efforts not only enhance reading comprehension but also develop cognitive and critical thinking skills. Libraries also serve as safe, quiet environments where individuals can engage in self-paced learning, explore literature, and cultivate a lifelong appreciation for reading. The availability of multilingual collections further strengthens literacy efforts by catering to diverse linguistic communities and helping non-native speakers develop proficiency in new languages.

Furthermore, libraries frequently collaborate with educational institutions, non-governmental organizations (NGOs), and literacy-focused groups to expand their reach. Partnerships with schools ensure that students receive supplementary learning materials, while alliances with NGOs facilitate book donation drives and mobile library initiatives for remote regions. Digital literacy has also become a core focus, with

NOTE

libraries incorporating technology into their literacy programs. Interactive e-books, audiobooks, and online literacy platforms enable users to engage with content in ways that cater to different learning preferences. Libraries provide workshops on digital literacy, teaching individuals how to navigate online resources, conduct research, and critically evaluate information. By bridging the literacy gap, libraries not only empower individuals to improve their academic and professional prospects but also contribute to broader social mobility, ensuring that knowledge remains accessible to all.

8.9 LIBRARIES AS INCLUSIVE SPACES FOR MARGINALIZED COMMUNITIES

Libraries play a fundamental role in fostering inclusivity by ensuring that marginalized communities have equitable access to information, resources, and learning opportunities. People with disabilities, economically disadvantaged groups, and linguistic or cultural minorities often face significant barriers in accessing traditional educational and informational materials. To address this, libraries have increasingly incorporated assistive technologies and adaptive resources to cater to diverse needs. For individuals with visual impairments, libraries provide braille books, audiobooks, screen readers, and voice-assisted catalogues, ensuring that they can navigate and access information independently. Similarly, for those with hearing impairments, libraries offer captioned videos, sign language interpretation services, and text-based learning tools. These initiatives create an inclusive environment that upholds the principles of equal opportunity and accessibility. Moreover, libraries act as safe spaces where marginalized groups can engage in learning without facing discrimination or exclusion.

Beyond physical accessibility, libraries also promote inclusivity by curating diverse collections that represent various cultures, languages, and perspectives. Multilingual book collections ensure that linguistic minorities can access literature and educational materials in their native languages, facilitating both literacy development and cultural preservation. Additionally, libraries host cultural programs, storytelling sessions, and community engagement initiatives that celebrate diversity and foster cross-cultural understanding. Outreach programs further extend library services to marginalized populations, including prisoners, refugees, and homeless individuals, who may not have regular access to traditional educational institutions. By prioritizing inclusivity, libraries reinforce their role as democratic institutions that empower individuals regardless of their socioeconomic background, ultimately contributing to a more informed, literate, and equitable society.

8.10 CHALLENGES FACED BY LIBRARIES IN SUPPORTING EDUCATION

NOTE

Despite their critical role in education, libraries face numerous challenges that hinder their ability to provide effective learning resources and services. One of the most pressing issues is financial constraints, as many public and academic libraries operate on limited budgets that restrict their ability to expand collections, upgrade technology, or hire skilled personnel. Budgetary limitations often result in outdated infrastructure, a lack of modern digital resources, and inadequate staffing, all of which negatively impact service delivery. Many school libraries, particularly in developing countries, struggle to maintain an adequate supply of books and digital resources, leaving students without the necessary materials to support their education. Furthermore, the increasing shift toward digital learning requires libraries to invest in costly technologies, such as e-books, virtual learning platforms, and high-speed internet access, which may be unattainable due to financial limitations.

Another major challenge is the digital divide, which disproportionately affects rural and economically disadvantaged communities. While digital transformation has revolutionized education, many individuals still lack access to the necessary technology or internet connectivity to fully utilize online library resources. This digital gap prevents many students and lifelong learners from benefiting from e-learning materials, virtual classrooms, and online research databases. Additionally, a shortage of trained library staff who possess expertise in digital literacy, information retrieval, and technological support further exacerbates the issue. Addressing these challenges requires strategic interventions, including increased government funding, public-private partnerships, and technological innovations that make digital learning tools more accessible. Libraries must also advocate for policies that prioritize equitable access to education and information, ensuring that they continue to serve as effective learning hubs for all individuals.

8.11 FUTURE DIRECTIONS FOR LIBRARIES IN EDUCATION

The future of libraries in education lies in their ability to embrace technological advancements and evolving user needs. As digital transformation accelerates, libraries are expected to integrate artificial intelligence (AI), virtual reality (VR), and big data analytics to enhance learning experiences. AI-driven search tools will provide personalized research recommendations, while VR-based educational programs will allow users to engage with immersive learning environments.

NOTE

Automated library services, including robotic book retrieval systems and AI-assisted cataloguing, will streamline operations and improve user experience. Smart libraries, equipped with IoT (Internet of Things) technology, will further optimize space utilization, automate circulation processes, and enhance accessibility for users with disabilities. These innovations will redefine how individuals interact with information, making libraries more dynamic and responsive to educational demands.

Additionally, libraries will play a crucial role in supporting online and hybrid learning models. With the rise of digital education, libraries will increasingly serve as access points for virtual classrooms, open educational resources (OERs), and cloud-based learning platforms. Many academic libraries are already expanding their digital repositories to include video lectures, online research databases, and open-access journals, enabling students and researchers to access knowledge remotely. Public libraries will also continue to bridge the digital divide by providing free internet access, lending electronic devices, and offering digital literacy training. As libraries evolve to meet the challenges of the 21st century, they must balance technological innovation with their core values of accessibility, intellectual freedom, and community engagement, ensuring that they remain vital educational institutions for generations to come.



Activity 8.1

Activity Title: Libraries as Learning Centres

Objective:

To understand how libraries support education.

Materials Required:

- Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. List three ways libraries support formal education.
2. List three ways they support non-formal education.

Outcome:

The learner understands the educational functions of libraries.

8.12 CONCLUSION

Libraries serve as powerful engines of educational transformation, bridging the gap between formal and non-formal learning while promoting literacy, research, and community development. Their role in education extends beyond book lending to include digital literacy

NOTE

training, inclusive learning environments, and support for marginalized communities. Despite the challenges they face, including financial constraints and technological disparities, libraries continue to adapt by integrating innovative technologies and expanding access to online resources. As the world transitions to more digital and hybrid learning models, libraries will remain at the heart of global knowledge dissemination. By embracing advancements such as AI, VR, and open-access resources, they will continue to provide valuable learning opportunities to students, professionals, and lifelong learners alike. Through sustained investment and policy support, libraries will not only overcome existing challenges but will also solidify their position as indispensable institutions in the evolving educational landscape. Their commitment to accessibility, inclusivity, and intellectual freedom ensures that they will remain vital centers for learning and community enrichment for generations to come.

☑ Check Your Progress 8.1

1. How do libraries support formal education, and why are they essential for students and educators?

.....

.....

.....

2. In what ways do libraries contribute to non-formal education and lifelong learning?

.....

.....

.....

3. What challenges do libraries face in supporting education, and how can they overcome them?

.....

.....

.....

8.13 SUMMARY

Libraries have always been pivotal to both formal and non-formal education, offering a broad range of resources that support learning across various settings. In formal education, libraries serve as academic hubs, providing students and educators with textbooks, journals,

NOTE

research papers, and access to digital repositories like JSTOR, ProQuest, and NDLI. These resources enhance the learning experience, teaching research skills, citation practices, and information literacy. Libraries also facilitate lifelong learning by hosting workshops, digital literacy programs, and career development resources that help individuals continue their education beyond the traditional classroom. In addition to storing knowledge, libraries promote critical thinking and enable learners to navigate the complex digital landscape, contributing to academic success and innovation. They support research and scientific advancements by offering access to specialized archives, open-access journals, and institutional repositories, ensuring research integrity and broadening knowledge dissemination. Libraries play an important role in non-formal education as well, providing free access to books, digital resources, and vocational training. Public libraries and community centers host literacy programs for children and adults, promote multilingual collections, and support marginalized groups. They also bridge the digital divide by offering free internet access and digital literacy workshops. Despite facing challenges such as budget constraints and outdated infrastructure, libraries are evolving by adopting emerging technologies like AI-driven learning tools and virtual reality to stay relevant. As hybrid spaces combining physical collections with cutting-edge technology, libraries will continue to be essential to education, research, and community development in the future.

8.14 GLOSSARY

- **Formal Education** – Structured education that takes place in schools, colleges, and universities, following a standardized curriculum.
- **Non-Formal Education** – Learning that occurs outside traditional academic institutions, including community programs, vocational training, and self-directed learning.
- **Lifelong Learning** – The continuous pursuit of knowledge and skills throughout an individual's life, beyond formal schooling.
- **Information Literacy** – The ability to locate, evaluate, and effectively use information from various sources.
- **Digital Literacy** – The ability to use digital tools, such as the internet and software, to access and evaluate information.
- **Academic Library** – A library within an educational institution that provides research and learning resources to students and faculty.
- **Public Library** – A library that serves the general public, offering free access to books, digital media, and community programs.

- **Open Educational Resources (OERs)** – Free, openly licensed learning materials available online for teaching, learning, and research.
- **Institutional Repository** – A digital archive where academic institutions store research papers, dissertations, and scholarly works.
- **Citation Management Tools** – Software that helps researchers organize and format citations in academic writing (e.g., EndNote, Zotero).
- **Media Literacy** – The ability to critically analyze and interpret media messages, distinguishing reliable sources from misinformation.
- **Digital Divide** – The gap between individuals who have access to digital technology and those who do not, often due to socioeconomic factors.
- **Smart Library** – A technologically advanced library that uses AI, automation, and digital tools to enhance user experience.
- **Plagiarism Detection Tools** – Software that helps detect copied content in academic writing (e.g., Turnitin).
- **Mobile Library** – A traveling library service that brings books and educational materials to remote or underserved communities.

8.15 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 8.1

1. Libraries play a crucial role in formal education by providing access to books, journals, research databases, and digital repositories. They support students in developing research skills, critical thinking, and information literacy, ensuring they can effectively navigate and use academic resources. Educators benefit from libraries by gaining access to teaching materials, scholarly publications, and multimedia content that enrich the curriculum. Additionally, libraries offer study spaces, technology-assisted learning tools, and research guidance, enhancing academic success. By bridging knowledge gaps and promoting intellectual engagement, libraries serve as indispensable institutions within educational systems at all levels.
2. Libraries support non-formal education by offering free access to books, vocational training, and digital learning resources. Public libraries and community learning centers host workshops, reading programs, and literacy initiatives that help individuals acquire new

NOTE

skills. Mobile libraries and digital kiosks bring knowledge to underserved areas, ensuring inclusivity in education. By providing resources for self-directed learning, libraries enable people to improve their knowledge and employability outside traditional academic institutions. Their role in promoting digital literacy, language learning, and career development ensures that learning is accessible to individuals of all backgrounds, fostering lifelong educational growth.

- Libraries encounter various challenges, including budget constraints, outdated infrastructure, and a lack of trained staff, which limit their ability to provide modern services. Additionally, the digital divide prevents many individuals, particularly in rural areas, from accessing online resources. To overcome these challenges, libraries must secure sustainable funding, collaborate with academic institutions and tech organizations, and invest in digital transformation. Integrating AI-driven learning tools, smart cataloging systems, and virtual learning spaces can enhance accessibility. Policy reforms and increased advocacy efforts are also essential to ensure that libraries remain vital educational institutions in an evolving digital landscape.

8.16 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3678	

8.17 REFERENCES

- ALA. Libraries and Learning: Supporting Formal and Non-Formal Education. American Library Association, 2021.
- Chowdhury, Gobinda. Digital Libraries and Information Access: Research Perspectives. Facet Publishing, 2013.
- Gorman, Michael. The Enduring Library: Technology, Tradition, and the Quest for Balance. ALA Editions, 2003.
- IFLA. The Role of Libraries in Supporting Literacy and Lifelong Learning. International Federation of Library Associations, 2019.

NOTE

- Kuhlthau, Carol C. Seeking Meaning: A Process Approach to Library and Information Services. Libraries Unlimited, 2004.
- Lankes, R. David. The Atlas of New Librarianship. MIT Press, 2011.
- Martzoukou, Konstantina, and Simon Smith. Academic Libraries and Information Literacy Education. Chandos Publishing, 2020.
- McMenemy, David. The Public Library. Facet Publishing, 2009.
- Nicholas, David, and Ian Rowlands. Digital Consumers: Reshaping the Information Professions. Facet Publishing, 2008.
- Oakleaf, Megan. The Value of Academic Libraries: A Comprehensive Research Review and Report. Association of College and Research Libraries, 2010.
- Pugh, Lyndon. Managing Change in Libraries and Information Services. Routledge, 2007.
- UNESCO. Libraries as Gateways to Knowledge: Supporting Learning in the 21st Century. UNESCO Publishing, 2018.
- Wilson, Kerry, and Anne Goulding. Information Literacy and Lifelong Learning: Policy and Practice. Chandos Publishing, 2016.

8.18 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

1. Which of the following best describes the role of libraries in formal education?

- a) Providing access to research materials and study spaces
- b) Replacing classroom teaching
- c) Restricting access to information
- d) Acting only as book repositories

2. How do libraries support non-formal education?

- a) By offering free workshops, online resources, and skill-building programs
- b) By limiting access to books to academic users
- c) By focusing only on printed materials
- d) By restricting non-students from using their services.

3. Which of the following digital tools are commonly used in academic libraries?

- a) JSTOR and ProQuest

NOTE

- b) Social media platforms
- c) Online shopping websites
- d) Music streaming services

4. What is a major challenge faced by libraries in supporting education?

- a) The increasing demand for print books
- b) Budget constraints and lack of digital resources
- c) The decline of literacy rates globally
- d) The abundance of free information sources

5. Which initiative helps bridge the digital divide in libraries?

- a) Restricting internet access
- b) Providing free public Wi-Fi and digital literacy training
- c) Eliminating print books
- d) Charging users for information access

Answer with Explanations:

1. a) **Providing access to research materials and study spaces** - Libraries enhance formal education by offering students and educators research materials, study spaces, and digital resources that complement classroom learning.
2. a) **By offering free workshops, online resources, and skill-building programs** - Public and community libraries provide learning opportunities such as workshops, digital literacy training, and vocational programs outside of traditional academic settings.
3. a) **JSTOR and ProQuest** - Academic libraries use digital databases such as JSTOR and ProQuest to provide access to scholarly journals, research papers, and e-books.
4. b) **Budget constraints and lack of digital resources** - Many libraries face financial and infrastructure challenges, limiting their ability to update collections and provide digital resources.
5. b) **Providing free public Wi-Fi and digital literacy training** - Many public libraries offer free internet access and technology training to help users develop digital literacy skills.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. How do libraries contribute to formal education?
2. What role do public libraries play in lifelong learning?

3. Why is digital literacy an important skill provided by libraries?
4. What challenges do libraries face in maintaining accessibility and resource availability?

NOTE

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the role of libraries in bridging the gap between formal and non-formal education. Provide examples of initiatives undertaken by libraries to support lifelong learning.
2. Examine the impact of digital transformation on library services. How have libraries evolved to meet the demands of digital learning?
3. Analyze the significance of libraries in supporting research and innovation. How do academic libraries facilitate knowledge creation and dissemination?

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. What are the key challenges faced by libraries in the 21st century, and what strategies can be adopted to overcome them?
2. How do libraries promote inclusivity and provide resources for marginalized communities? Discuss with examples.
3. How are modern libraries adapting to technological advancements?

UNIT 9

PUBLICITY AND EXTENSION ACTIVITIES IN LIBRARIES

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 9.1 Introduction**
- 9.2 Objective**
- 9.3 Publicity and Extension Activities in Libraries**
- 9.4 Importance of Publicity in Library Services**
- 9.5 Library Extension Services and Their Role in Community Engagement**
- 9.6 Use of Digital and Social Media for Library Promotion**
- 9.7 Organizing Exhibitions, Book Fairs, and Public Lectures**
- 9.8 Challenges in Publicity and Extension Activities**
- 9.9 Role of Government and Institutional Support**
- 9.10 Innovative Strategies for Library Publicity and Outreach**
- 9.11 Future Directions for Publicity and Extension in Libraries**
- 9.12 Conclusion**
- 9.13 Summary**
- 9.14 Glossary**
- 9.15 Answers to check your progress**
- 9.16 Suggested readings - OER**
- 9.17 Reference**
- 9.18 Exercise**

9.1 INTRODUCTION

Publicity and extension activities in libraries play a crucial role in promoting library services, increasing user engagement, and fostering a culture of reading and learning. Traditional libraries often face challenges in attracting users due to lack of awareness, changing reading habits, and the rise of digital content. To address these challenges, libraries implement various publicity strategies, such as organizing book fairs, literary events, and public lectures. Social media platforms, websites, and newsletters are also used to reach a wider audience and inform them about new arrivals, services, and special programs. Effective marketing of library services helps attract different user groups, including students, professionals, and senior citizens, ensuring that library resources are optimally utilized. Extension

NOTE

activities go beyond traditional library services by actively engaging communities in educational and cultural programs. Many libraries conduct outreach programs, mobile library services, and digital literacy workshops to support underprivileged populations. Libraries also collaborate with educational institutions, corporate sectors, and government agencies to enhance learning opportunities for all. In the digital age, virtual tours, webinars, and online reading clubs have become popular forms of library outreach. These initiatives help libraries remain relevant and demonstrate their role as dynamic knowledge centers. Publicity and extension activities are essential for modern libraries to sustain their importance and continue serving as vital institutions in society.

9.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To analyse the importance of publicity in library services.
- To explore various extension activities conducted by libraries.
- To analyze the impact of digital media on library outreach.
- To examine best practices for promoting library engagement.
- To assess the role of libraries in community development through outreach programs.

9.3 PUBLICITY AND EXTENSION ACTIVITIES IN LIBRARIES

Publicity and extension activities are essential components of modern library management, serving to enhance visibility, relevance, and user engagement. Publicity refers to the strategic promotion of library services, collections, and programs through various channels to create awareness and attract users. In contrast, extension activities are designed to expand the library's reach beyond its walls, bringing resources and services to those who may not have direct access. Together, these functions help libraries fulfill their mission of democratizing access to knowledge. Libraries today face stiff competition from digital platforms and alternative information providers, making it imperative for them to actively communicate their value to diverse user communities. Whether it's students, researchers, professionals, or marginalized populations, effective publicity ensures that potential users are informed about the resources and support available. Moreover, well-planned extension programs allow libraries to engage with communities that lack sufficient access to formal education or digital infrastructure, thereby reinforcing the library's role in promoting equitable access to information. Libraries use a combination

NOTE

of traditional and modern tools to carry out publicity and extension efforts. Conventional methods such as newsletters, community bulletin boards, posters, and local newspaper articles remain useful for reaching local populations, especially in smaller towns or rural areas. However, in the digital era, libraries increasingly leverage technology to amplify their outreach. Social media platforms like Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, and YouTube serve as powerful tools for marketing library events, new arrivals, digital services, and reading programs. Websites and mobile apps provide a central hub for information and user engagement, while email campaigns can keep users updated about workshops, author talks, or policy changes. Extension activities often include mobile libraries that travel to remote areas, bringing books and digital resources to underserved communities. Libraries also partner with educational institutions, NGOs, and government agencies to run literacy drives, vocational training, health awareness sessions, and ICT-based learning programs. These efforts not only extend access but also encourage community participation, lifelong learning, and digital inclusion. The impact of publicity and extension activities goes beyond mere user numbers; it fosters community development, enhances educational outcomes, and promotes a culture of reading and knowledge-sharing. For instance, library outreach in urban slums or rural areas can empower women, support children's education, and provide adults with opportunities for skill development. Similarly, publicizing digital services such as e-books, databases, and online learning platforms enables remote users to benefit from the library without physical visits. Many libraries also conduct book exhibitions, author meet-and-greets, storytelling sessions, reading clubs, and public lectures as PART-of their extension programming. These activities transform libraries into community-centric spaces that encourage dialogue, creativity, and innovation. The challenges—such as limited funding, staffing constraints, or lack of technological infrastructure—can be mitigated through strategic planning, community collaboration, and volunteer engagement. Moving forward, libraries must invest in data-driven publicity strategies, inclusive outreach models, and continuous feedback systems to assess impact and adapt services accordingly. With a balanced focus on publicity and extension, libraries can maintain their relevance as inclusive learning hubs and catalysts of social change in the 21st century.

9.4 IMPORTANCE OF PUBLICITY IN LIBRARY SERVICES

Publicity is vital for libraries as it increases awareness about available resources, attracts new users, and ensures the active participation of

HISTORY OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE

NOTE

the community in library programs. Despite the wide range of free and valuable services that libraries offer, many potential users, particularly in rural and semi-urban areas, remain unaware of their benefits. Publicity efforts help bridge this gap by disseminating information about library collections, digital databases, research assistance, and educational events. Furthermore, publicity enhances user engagement by keeping the public informed about new arrivals, special programs, and technological advancements in library services.

Both traditional and digital publicity strategies are crucial in reaching a broad audience. Traditional methods such as posters, community bulletin boards, library brochures, and word-of-mouth promotions continue to be effective, especially in local communities. However, digital publicity channels, including social media platforms, library blogs, virtual newsletters, and search engine optimization (SEO) techniques, have significantly expanded the reach of library services. Moreover, publicity plays a key role in securing funding for libraries, as well-advertised success stories and community impact reports help attract sponsorships, grants, and donations. Effective publicity requires strategic planning, with libraries identifying their target audiences, selecting appropriate communication channels, and creating engaging promotional content tailored to different user needs.

**9.5 LIBRARY EXTENSION SERVICES AND THEIR
ROLE IN COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT**

Library extension services play a pivotal role in expanding the reach of traditional library functions by taking knowledge resources and learning opportunities directly to the people, particularly those in marginalized or underserved communities. Unlike the conventional model that requires individuals to visit a physical library, extension services aim to bring the library to the community, fostering inclusivity and removing barriers to access. These services are critical in democratizing information and supporting social development, especially for populations that may face geographical, economic, or social constraints. Whether through bookmobiles in rural areas, reading programs for underprivileged children, or digital kiosks in urban slums, extension services make libraries relevant to a wider audience. They align with the broader goals of community engagement, literacy promotion, and lifelong learning by actively involving the public in educational and cultural activities. In this way, library extension services act as tools of empowerment, allowing individuals to access knowledge, improve their skills, and participate more fully in society.

A wide array of extension services illustrates the innovative ways libraries are adapting to community needs. One of the most well-known

NOTE

examples is the mobile library or bookmobile, which is essentially a library on wheels that delivers books, educational material, and digital media to areas lacking a permanent library facility. These mobile units often serve rural villages, remote towns, and disaster-stricken regions, ensuring continuity in learning and access to information. In urban contexts, public libraries partner with NGOs, local schools, and social organizations to run reading clubs, adult literacy classes, and computer training programs. Libraries also organize storytelling sessions for children, health awareness workshops, career counseling sessions for youth, and digital literacy training for the elderly. In addition, information kiosks and pop-up libraries set up in community centers, shopping malls, and transport hubs further diversify the scope of extension activities. These services are not just about lending books—they also aim to cultivate informed citizenship by equipping users with practical knowledge, enhancing critical thinking, and fostering cultural appreciation.

The impact of library extension services on community engagement is both measurable and transformative. When libraries engage directly with their communities, they become more than information repositories—they evolve into dynamic, inclusive, and socially responsive institutions. Extension services help foster a sense of belonging and civic responsibility among users, particularly when libraries act as safe spaces for dialogue, learning, and cultural expression. They also support national development goals by promoting literacy, reducing educational inequality, and encouraging digital inclusion. For example, in communities with low female literacy rates, targeted library outreach programs can significantly improve women's access to education and resources. In areas prone to social unrest or displacement, library outreach helps restore continuity in education and psychosocial well-being. However, successful extension services depend on adequate funding, trained personnel, and community participation. Libraries must engage in continuous needs assessments, build partnerships with local stakeholders, and leverage technology to expand their reach. In doing so, they ensure that extension services are not only impactful but also sustainable, thereby reinforcing the library's mission as a cornerstone of community empowerment and educational equity.

9.6 USE OF DIGITAL AND SOCIAL MEDIA FOR LIBRARY PROMOTION

The rise of digital technology and social media has significantly transformed how libraries promote their services. Social media

NOTE

platforms such as Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, LinkedIn, and YouTube enable libraries to communicate directly with their patrons, share real-time updates, and create interactive engagement opportunities. Unlike traditional publicity methods, digital marketing allows libraries to reach a wider audience more efficiently, fostering stronger user relationships.

Libraries use digital platforms for various promotional activities, including virtual book discussions, live Q&A sessions with authors, and online tutorials on using library databases. Many libraries now produce podcasts on literary discussions, research methodologies, and current affairs, offering users an alternative way to access knowledge. Social media contests, reading challenges, and interactive storytelling sessions further encourage community participation. Additionally, well-maintained library websites with search functionalities, event calendars, and blog sections enhance digital accessibility. Email marketing, targeted advertisements, and search engine optimization (SEO) strategies further improve a library's outreach, ensuring that library resources are effectively publicized in the digital landscape.

9.7 ORGANIZING EXHIBITIONS, BOOK FAIRS, AND PUBLIC LECTURES

Organizing exhibitions, book fairs, and public lectures is an effective way for libraries to attract visitors, promote reading culture, and enhance their visibility. These events provide opportunities for the library to showcase its collections, engage with the public, and foster intellectual discussions. Exhibitions on specific themes—such as science, history, literature, or cultural heritage—draw interest from diverse groups, encouraging them to explore library resources. Similarly, book fairs organized in collaboration with publishers and bookstores give readers access to a wide range of books while simultaneously promoting the role of libraries in academic and leisure reading.

Public lectures featuring renowned authors, scholars, and subject experts help position the library as an educational and intellectual hub. These events may include workshops on research skills, creative writing, or career development, adding value to library services beyond book lending. Additionally, panel discussions, literary festivals, and storytelling sessions contribute to a vibrant intellectual atmosphere, strengthening the connection between the library and its patrons. Through these initiatives, libraries successfully establish themselves as centers of lifelong learning and cultural enrichment, drawing attention to their resources and services while actively engaging the community.

9.8 CHALLENGES IN PUBLICITY AND EXTENSION ACTIVITIES

NOTE

Publicity and extension activities in libraries are essential for promoting awareness, increasing user engagement, and ensuring equitable access to resources. However, these initiatives face several challenges that hinder their effectiveness. One of the most significant barriers is limited funding, which restricts libraries from investing in marketing and outreach programs. Many public and institutional libraries operate on constrained budgets, making it difficult to allocate funds for promotional activities, digital campaigns, and extension services. Without adequate financial support, libraries struggle to develop high-quality advertisements, maintain active social media presence, or conduct large-scale community outreach programs. Another major challenge is the lack of trained personnel to manage digital promotion. Effective library publicity requires expertise in digital marketing, content creation, and social media management—skills that traditional librarians may not possess. Many libraries lack specialized staff trained in these areas, leading to suboptimal promotional strategies and reduced visibility of services. Technological barriers also present significant challenges to publicity and extension activities in libraries. While many libraries have embraced digital transformation, disparities in technological access continue to limit outreach efforts. In rural and underserved areas, inadequate internet connectivity and lack of digital literacy prevent potential users from accessing online resources and virtual library services. Many users are unaware of digital catalogs, e-books, and research databases, leading to underutilization of library offerings. Additionally, low awareness among rural communities about the existence and benefits of library services further impedes outreach efforts. Many individuals, particularly in developing regions, do not recognize libraries as essential community resources, reducing the effectiveness of publicity campaigns. To overcome these challenges, libraries must collaborate with government agencies, educational institutions, and technology providers to implement sustainable outreach and publicity strategies. By securing grants, enhancing digital literacy initiatives, and leveraging partnerships with media organizations, libraries can effectively address these barriers and expand their reach.

9.9 ROLE OF GOVERNMENT AND INSTITUTIONAL SUPPORT

Government policies and institutional support play a crucial role in the success of library outreach and publicity initiatives. Recognizing the significance of libraries in promoting education and lifelong learning,

NOTE

many governments and organizations provide financial assistance, infrastructural support, and policy frameworks to enhance library services. For instance, programs such as the National Mission on Libraries (NML) in India aim to modernize public libraries, improve digital access, and promote inclusive knowledge-sharing. Similarly, global initiatives like UNESCO's Information for All Programme (IFAP) work towards strengthening library networks and ensuring equitable information access for diverse populations. Institutional funding from universities, research centers, and local governments is also instrumental in supporting publicity campaigns, community engagement programs, and technological upgrades in libraries. Without consistent government intervention and institutional backing, libraries may struggle to sustain their outreach efforts, leading to decreased user participation and underutilization of resources.

In addition to government support, corporate sponsorships, non-governmental organization (NGO) collaborations, and academic partnerships significantly contribute to the expansion of library publicity and extension activities. Many corporations invest in corporate social responsibility (CSR) programs that fund literacy campaigns, mobile libraries, and digital learning initiatives. NGOs working in education and literacy sectors often partner with libraries to promote reading habits, host workshops, and distribute free learning materials. Academic institutions collaborate with libraries to enhance research assistance services, organize student engagement programs, and facilitate knowledge-sharing events. Libraries must actively engage in policy advocacy by demonstrating their societal impact and aligning their objectives with national education and digital transformation goals. By strengthening their relationships with funding agencies, policymakers, and community stakeholders, libraries can ensure sustainable financial and infrastructural support for their publicity and extension activities.

9.10 INNOVATIVE STRATEGIES FOR LIBRARY PUBLICITY AND OUTREACH

To remain relevant in the digital age, libraries must adopt innovative strategies to attract and retain users. Traditional publicity methods such as printed brochures and community bulletin boards are no longer sufficient in reaching modern information seekers. Emerging trends in library marketing include gamification, where libraries introduce quizzes, competitions, and reading challenges to make learning interactive and engaging. These initiatives encourage participation, especially among younger users, by incorporating elements of competition and rewards. Virtual reality (VR) experiences are another cutting-edge approach, allowing users to explore historical archives,

museum collections, and library exhibits through immersive digital environments. By leveraging VR technology, libraries can create interactive educational experiences that enhance user engagement and promote cultural awareness.

Artificial intelligence (AI) has also transformed library publicity and outreach by enabling AI-powered chatbots that provide instant assistance to users. Chatbots can guide users in navigating library catalogs, recommending books, and answering frequently asked questions. Additionally, collaborations with social media influencers and content creators have proven effective in promoting reading habits and library services to a wider audience. Many libraries have begun partnering with book bloggers, YouTube reviewers, and educational content creators to increase their visibility among digital users. By embracing these modern marketing techniques, libraries can expand their reach, attract new patrons, and maintain their role as essential knowledge hubs in the digital landscape.

NOTE



Activity 9.1

Activity Title: Planning a Library Promotion Activity

Objective:

To understand methods of promoting library services.

Materials Required:

- Notebook
- Pen

Procedure:

1. Suggest one publicity activity for a library.
2. Suggest one extension activity for the community.
3. Write one benefit of each.

Outcome:

The learner understands the importance of library outreach activities.

9.11 FUTURE DIRECTIONS FOR PUBLICITY AND EXTENSION IN LIBRARIES

The future of library publicity and extension activities lies in embracing digital transformation and expanding accessibility initiatives. As more users shift towards online learning and digital research, libraries must enhance their digital services through e-libraries, virtual events, and AI-driven research assistance. Implementing cloud-based digital repositories and mobile-friendly library platforms can further improve

NOTE

user experience and remote accessibility. Strengthening public-private partnerships will be crucial in securing sustainable funding for outreach programs. Libraries can collaborate with technology firms, publishing houses, and educational organizations to support digital literacy campaigns, provide free access to online learning resources, and develop innovative knowledge-sharing platforms.

In addition to technological advancements, libraries must focus on inclusivity and diversity in their outreach strategies. Expanding multilingual content, providing braille materials for visually impaired users, and integrating adaptive technologies for differently-abled individuals are essential steps toward ensuring equitable access to information. Open-access platforms will also play a critical role in the future of library publicity, allowing users to freely access academic research, digital archives, and educational materials. By continuously innovating and adapting to the evolving needs of modern information seekers, libraries can reinforce their role as community-driven knowledge centers. Effective publicity and extension activities will ensure that libraries remain at the forefront of education, literacy, and community empowerment in the digital age.

9.12 CONCLUSION

Publicity and extension activities play a transformative role in the modern library landscape by expanding the reach and visibility of library services across various segments of society. In an age where digital information is abundant but not always accessible or trustworthy, libraries must assert their presence through strategic outreach efforts. Publicity—through channels like social media, interactive websites, newsletters, blogs, and community engagement campaigns—ensures that the public remains informed about the wealth of services libraries offer. Simultaneously, traditional methods such as posters, newspaper announcements, and public service broadcasts continue to hold value, especially in regions with limited digital access. Extension services further this mission by physically and virtually bringing libraries to users who might otherwise be excluded from such resources. These services include mobile libraries, rural outreach, digital literacy training, library kiosks, and targeted initiatives for senior citizens, women, children, and people with disabilities. Through these channels, libraries not only disseminate information but also cultivate an inclusive learning environment that promotes social equity and intellectual empowerment. The dynamic interplay of publicity and extension ensures that libraries evolve from being passive information repositories to becoming proactive agents of change that drive literacy, lifelong learning, and informed citizenship.

NOTE

Despite their undeniable value, publicity and extension efforts are not without challenges. Many libraries operate under strict budgetary constraints, struggle with outdated infrastructure, and lack dedicated personnel trained in outreach and communication. Moreover, disparities in digital access and awareness further complicate outreach to remote or marginalized populations. Addressing these issues calls for a multi-stakeholder approach that includes government funding, public-private partnerships, and international collaboration to upgrade facilities, enhance staff capabilities, and develop adaptive technologies. National initiatives like the National Mission on Libraries in India exemplify steps being taken to modernize library services and promote inclusivity. Moving forward, libraries must embrace innovation by incorporating tools such as artificial intelligence, virtual and augmented reality, gamification, and multilingual content to attract and retain users. Partnerships with educational institutions, NGOs, and technology firms can also help libraries remain responsive to community needs. Ultimately, the success of library publicity and extension lies in their ability to build strong community relationships, adapt to changing user behaviors, and stay committed to the core values of open access and intellectual freedom. As societies continue to evolve, libraries that invest in robust outreach mechanisms will be better positioned to empower citizens, bridge knowledge gaps, and sustain their role as indispensable pillars of education and community engagement.

☑ Check Your Progress 9.1

1. Why is publicity important for libraries in the digital age?

.....

.....

.....

2. How do extension activities help in community engagement?

.....

.....

.....

3. What are some innovative strategies libraries can use for publicity and outreach?

.....

.....

.....

NOTE**9.13 SUMMARY**

Libraries play a crucial role in democratizing access to knowledge by offering free and equitable resources for education, research, and lifelong learning. To maintain their relevance in an increasingly digital world, libraries must engage in both publicity and extension activities. Publicity involves strategically promoting services, collections, and events to inform and attract users. While traditional methods such as brochures and newspaper ads are still used, digital platforms like social media, email newsletters, and interactive websites have become central to outreach. These tools enable libraries to conduct virtual book discussions, author interactions, and digital campaigns, significantly broadening their audience. Effective publicity not only increases usage but also helps secure funding and institutional support by showcasing a library's societal impact. However, budget constraints and lack of skilled marketing personnel often limit the scope of such efforts. Extension activities, meanwhile, allow libraries to serve marginalized and remote populations through mobile libraries, literacy initiatives, and digital access points. Outreach programs tailored for senior citizens, underserved youth, and differently-abled users ensure inclusive education and digital literacy. Collaborations with NGOs and schools foster reading habits and bridge educational divides, while career counseling, exhibitions, and workshops promote intellectual engagement. Challenges such as limited infrastructure and low public awareness hinder outreach effectiveness, necessitating government support and strategic partnerships. Programs like India's National Mission on Libraries exemplify how modernization efforts can improve service delivery. By adopting emerging technologies like AI, gamification, and virtual reality, and offering multilingual content, libraries can reinvent themselves as dynamic, community-centered knowledge hubs that champion inclusive, lifelong learning.

9.14 GLOSSARY

- **Publicity** – The process of promoting library services to increase awareness and engagement among users.
- **Extension Activities** – Programs designed to take library services beyond physical locations to reach wider communities.
- **Digital Literacy** – The ability to use digital tools, internet resources, and technology effectively for learning and research.
- **SEO (Search Engine Optimization)** – A strategy to enhance the online visibility of library websites in search engine results.
- **Mobile Library** – A vehicle-based or portable library service that provides books and resources to remote areas.

NOTE

- **Outreach Programs** – Community-based initiatives aimed at extending library services to underprivileged and marginalized groups.
- **Community Engagement** – Activities that encourage public participation and interaction with library resources and services.
- **Social Media Marketing** – The use of social networking platforms to promote library activities and interact with users.
- **Fundraising** – Efforts to secure financial support through grants, sponsorships, and donations to sustain library services.
- **Book Fair** – An event where books from various publishers are displayed and sold to promote reading culture.
- **Exhibition** – A display of books, manuscripts, or themed collections to educate and engage visitors.
- **AI-Powered Chatbots** – Automated virtual assistants that help users with library queries and navigation.
- **Gamification** – The application of game-like elements, such as quizzes and rewards, to enhance library engagement.
- **Institutional Support** – Financial and infrastructural backing from academic institutions, government bodies, or private organizations.
- **Public-Private Partnerships** – Collaborative initiatives between libraries and corporate or non-governmental organizations to enhance outreach.

9.15 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 9.1

1. Publicity is essential for libraries to increase awareness about their resources and attract new users, especially in an era dominated by digital information sources. Libraries must actively promote their services using both traditional methods (posters, brochures, newspaper ads) and digital strategies (social media, websites, and email newsletters). Publicity also plays a crucial role in securing funding and institutional support, as well-marketed libraries demonstrate their impact on education and society. Additionally, well-planned promotional campaigns ensure that libraries remain competitive with online learning platforms, making their resources accessible and relevant to modern users.
2. Library extension activities aim to make knowledge more accessible by reaching users outside traditional library spaces. Initiatives like mobile libraries, literacy programs, reading clubs, and community workshops help bridge information gaps, especially among underserved populations. Outreach services also include training on digital literacy, career guidance, and access to government schemes.

NOTE

By collaborating with schools, NGOs, and local organizations, libraries transform into community hubs that promote lifelong learning and social development. Extension activities ensure that libraries remain inclusive spaces that support educational and professional growth.

- Libraries can adopt innovative strategies like gamification, where quizzes and competitions engage users in learning. Virtual reality (VR) experiences can make archives more interactive, while AI-powered chatbots assist users with queries. Collaborating with influencers and content creators helps attract younger audiences, while targeted digital marketing (SEO, email campaigns, and social media ads) ensures broader outreach. Hosting virtual book discussions, online author interactions, and live Q&A sessions enhances engagement. These strategies make libraries more interactive, accessible, and appealing in the digital era.

9.16 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3679	

9.17 REFERENCES

- American Library Association. The Library Publicity Handbook. ALA Editions, 2018.
- Evans, G. Edward, and Stacey Greenwell. Management Basics for Information Professionals. 4th ed., ALA Neal-Schuman, 2018.
- Johnson, Peggy. Fundamentals of Collection Development and Management. 4th ed., ALA Editions, 2018.
- Rubin, Richard E., and Rachel G. Rubin. Foundations of Library and Information Science. 5th ed., ALA Neal-Schuman, 2020.
- Singh, Surya Nath. Library and Information Science in the Digital Era: Challenges and Opportunities. EssEss Publications, 2015.
- Smith, Ken, and Sandra Hirsh. Transforming Information Literacy Programs: Intersecting Frontiers of Self, Library Culture, and Campus Community. Rowman & Littlefield, 2020.
- Sreenivasulu, V. Digital Libraries: Knowledge, Information, and Data in an Open Access Society. Routledge, 2018.

9.18 EXERCISE**NOTE****PART-1****A. Multiple Choice Questions:****1. What is the primary purpose of publicity in libraries?**

- a) To increase the library's book collection
- b) To enhance public awareness about library services
- c) To replace traditional library services with digital resources
- d) To limit access to library services to members only

2. Which of the following is NOT an example of a library extension activity?

- a) Mobile library services
- b) Reading clubs
- c) Book cataloging
- d) Literacy programs

3. How has digital technology influenced library publicity?

- a) By eliminating the need for physical books
- b) By reducing the importance of outreach programs
- c) By providing new platforms for engagement, such as social media and websites
- d) By replacing traditional library services with online databases

4. Which challenge do libraries commonly face in conducting publicity and extension activities?

- a) Excessive funding availability
- b) Lack of trained personnel for digital marketing
- c) Overuse of print media for publicity
- d) Restriction of library services to academic users only

5. What role do exhibitions and book fairs play in library publicity?

- a) They generate revenue for libraries through ticket sales
- b) They restrict access to only registered library members
- c) They attract visitors, promote books, and encourage community participation
- d) They eliminate the need for traditional library publicity efforts

Answer with Explanations:

- 1. b) To enhance public awareness about library services** - Publicity helps libraries reach a wider audience by promoting their resources and services through traditional and digital means.

NOTE

2. c) **Book cataloguing** - Cataloging is an internal library function, whereas extension activities involve outreach efforts to engage communities.
3. c) **By providing new platforms for engagement, such as social media and websites** - Libraries now use digital platforms like social media, blogs, and email campaigns to promote services and interact with users.
4. b) **Lack of trained personnel for digital marketing** - Many libraries struggle to hire staff with expertise in digital promotion, making it difficult to effectively use online platforms for outreach.
5. c) **They attract visitors, promote books, and encourage community participation** - Events like book fairs and exhibitions draw public interest, showcase library resources, and encourage engagement with literary and academic materials.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. What is the significance of publicity in library services?
2. How do library extension services help underserved communities?
3. Name three digital strategies libraries use for promotion.
4. What are some challenges faced by libraries in conducting publicity campaigns?

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the role of digital and social media in library promotion.
2. Explain the importance of library extension services and their impact on community engagement.
3. What are the major challenges in publicity and extension activities, and how can libraries overcome them?

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. How do exhibitions, book fairs, and public lectures serve as tools for library publicity?
2. What are the future trends in publicity and extension activities in libraries?
3. How do book fairs and public lectures contribute to library outreach?



DR. C.V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY

Chhattisgarh, Bilaspur AN AISECT GROUP UNIVERSITY

Approved by : PCI | AICTE | NCTE | BCI | Member of : AIU | Joint Committee : UGC | DEB | AICTE | Recognized by : UGC | A NAAC Accredited University



DR. C. V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY (C.G.)

SLM FEEDBACK FORM

PROGRAMME : _____

COURSE : _____

BLOCK : _____

UNIT : _____

Dear Student,

While studying the units of this block, you may have found certain portions of the text difficult to comprehend. We wish to know your difficulties and suggestions, in order to improve the course. Therefore, we request you to fill up and send us the following questionnaire, which pertains to this block. If you find the space provided insufficient, kindly use a separate sheet.

Please mail to aisectcontent@aisect.org/ for online submission please scan QR code:

Questionnaire

1. Name : _____

2. Enrolment No. :

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3. How many hours did you need for studying the units? :

--

4. Please give your reactions to the following items based on your reading of the block:

Items	Excellent	Very Good	Good	Poor	Give specific Examples (If poor)
Presentation Quality					
Language and Style					
Illustrations					
Used (diagrams, tables, etc.)					
Conceptual Clarity					
Check Your Progress Questions					
Suggested Readings - OER					

5. Any other comments:

BLOCK – 4	LIBRARY MOVEMENTS AND KEY CONTRIBUTORS	167 – 238
UNIT-10	Library Movement in India	169
UNIT-11	Contribution of S.R. Ranganathan to Library Science	187
UNIT-12	Contribution of Melvil Dewey to Library Science	205
UNIT-13	Role of Union and State Government in the Improvement of Library Services	221



Focuses on the evolution of library movements in India and the significant contributions of pioneers who shaped modern library science. Library movements have played a crucial role in expanding access to knowledge, promoting literacy, and fostering community engagement across the country. Visionary individuals such as S.R. Ranganathan and Melvil Dewey laid the theoretical and practical foundations of library science, introducing classification systems, laws, and standards that continue to guide library management worldwide. Ranganathan's work, especially the Five Laws of Library Science, revolutionized Indian librarianship, while Dewey's innovations influenced library organization globally. Additionally, the proactive involvement of Union and State governments in promoting library infrastructure, policies, and services has been instrumental in supporting these movements. By studying these developments and contributions, this block highlights how visionary leadership, systemic reforms, and organized movements collectively strengthened libraries as key instruments for education, culture, and societal progress in India.

UNIT 10

LIBRARY MOVEMENT IN INDIA

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 10.1 Introduction**
- 10.2 Objective**
- 10.3 The Library Movement in India**
- 10.4 Historical Development of the Library Movement in India**
- 10.5 Contribution of S.R. Ranganathan to the Library Movement**
- 10.6 Role of Public Library Legislation in India**
- 10.7 Role of Library Associations in the Indian Library Movement**
- 10.8 Challenges in the Library Movement in India**
- 10.9 Government Initiatives for Library Development**
- 10.10 Digital Libraries and Their Impact on the Library Movement**
- 10.11 Future Directions for the Library Movement in India**
- 10.12 Conclusion**
- 10.13 Summary**
- 10.14 Glossary**
- 10.15 Answers to check your progress**
- 10.16 Suggested readings - OER**
- 10.17 Reference**
- 10.18 Exercise**

10.1 INTRODUCTION

The Library Movement in India has been a cornerstone of the nation's educational and literacy development, tracing its roots to the early 19th century when the first public libraries were established to democratize knowledge and promote societal advancement. Visionaries like W.A. Borden and Dr. S.R. Ranganathan were instrumental in shaping the modern library system, with Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science providing the philosophical and operational foundation for library services across India. His contributions established standards for classification, cataloguing, and user-centric service delivery, positioning libraries as key instruments for learning and empowerment. The subsequent enactment of Library Acts in various Indian states offered legal legitimacy to library development, ensuring that public libraries could be systematically established and maintained across

NOTE

different regions. Post-independence, institutional support grew stronger through national-level initiatives like the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) and the National Mission on Libraries (NML), which aimed to modernize library infrastructure and expand outreach, especially to underserved communities. Despite these strides, challenges such as insufficient funding, a shortage of skilled library professionals, and the widening digital divide have hindered comprehensive progress. Nevertheless, the movement has embraced digital transformation through innovations like e-libraries, mobile library vans, and digital archives, making knowledge more accessible, especially in rural and remote areas. These efforts have begun to bridge gaps in infrastructure and literacy, highlighting the evolving role of libraries in the digital age. The future of the library movement in India rests on further strengthening digital infrastructure, fostering rural library networks, and encouraging greater public involvement. By adapting to technological changes while preserving their core mission, libraries will continue to serve as engines of literacy, research, cultural preservation, and democratic access to information, contributing profoundly to India's social and intellectual fabric.

10.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To trace the historical development of the library movement in India.
- To analyse the role of key figures in library development.
- To analyze the impact of government policies on library expansion.
- To explore challenges faced by the Indian library movement.
- To assess future directions for library growth in India.

10.3 THE LIBRARY MOVEMENT IN INDIA

The Library Movement in India represents a significant and transformative journey towards building a knowledge-based society through the establishment and development of libraries across diverse regions of the country. Emerging during the pre-independence era, libraries played a pivotal role not only in educational advancement but also in supporting nationalist sentiments and social reforms. They became vital spaces for intellectual discourse, cultural preservation, and political awareness. Many of these early libraries were founded by social reformers, philanthropists, and scholars who recognized the importance of access to knowledge in creating an enlightened and empowered citizenry. One of the most notable figures in this context is

NOTE

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, often referred to as the father of library science in India. His Five Laws of Library Science and contributions to library classification and cataloguing systems laid the foundation for modern librarianship in the country. Alongside him, W.A. Borden and other educators worked to institutionalize libraries as community resources. Post-independence, the Indian government recognized the vital role of libraries in nation-building and undertook numerous initiatives to strengthen the public library system. The establishment of the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) in 1972 was a milestone that provided structured funding and policy support to libraries nationwide. In addition, several state governments enacted Library Acts to ensure sustained development and regulation of public libraries, providing a legislative backbone to the movement.

As the movement progressed, libraries began to face significant challenges, particularly concerning infrastructure, trained human resources, and financial sustainability. Many rural and semi-urban regions still lack access to well-equipped library facilities. Although state-sponsored library systems were established, they often suffered from neglect, outdated materials, and minimal community engagement. With the advent of the digital age, the dynamics of information access changed dramatically. Traditional library services were no longer sufficient in catering to the evolving needs of users, especially younger generations accustomed to digital interfaces. Nevertheless, this shift opened new opportunities for revitalizing the library movement through digital tools. E-libraries, digital repositories, and integrated library management systems have helped bridge the gap between physical limitations and user expectations. Furthermore, library automation and ICT integration began transforming service delivery in academic and public libraries. Several non-governmental organizations and private enterprises have joined hands with public institutions to create mobile libraries, provide digital literacy training, and introduce innovative reading programs. Public-private partnerships have shown promise in sustaining and expanding library outreach, particularly in marginalized communities. These collaborative efforts underline the necessity of cross-sectoral support to revitalize library culture and maintain relevance in the 21st century.

Looking ahead, the future of the library movement in India depends on how effectively it adapts to the emerging technological and social landscape. There is a growing recognition that libraries must function not merely as book repositories but as dynamic community learning centers offering a range of educational and digital services. Policy advocacy will play a crucial role in securing budgetary allocations, standardizing services, and ensuring equitable distribution of library infrastructure. Special attention must be given to the development of rural libraries, including provisions for mobile library vans, multilingual

NOTE

collections, and inclusive resources for differently-abled users. Strengthening library science education and offering continuous professional development to librarians are also vital to the movement's sustainability. Additionally, fostering reading habits among youth through storytelling sessions, book clubs, reading challenges, and author interactions can reinvigorate library usage. Global library trends such as open access, maker spaces, artificial intelligence integration, and user-generated content platforms offer exciting possibilities for the Indian library movement. By leveraging these innovations, libraries can expand their influence and continue serving as critical agents of social transformation, cultural preservation, and inclusive development in India's diverse and evolving society.

10.4 HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE LIBRARY MOVEMENT IN INDIA

The history of the library movement in India can be categorized into three distinct phases: the pre-colonial period, the colonial period, and the post-independence period. The pre-colonial period saw the emergence of knowledge centers such as Nalanda and Takshashila, which housed vast collections of manuscripts and scholarly texts. Libraries during this era were often associated with temples, monasteries, and royal courts, serving as repositories of cultural and religious knowledge. The medieval period witnessed the establishment of libraries by rulers like Akbar and Tipu Sultan, but these were primarily limited to elite circles. Despite these early developments, there was no structured public library system accessible to the common people.

The colonial period marked the formalization of library services, mainly for administrative and academic purposes under British rule. Significant milestones during this time included the establishment of public libraries in major cities, the founding of the Calcutta Public Library in 1836, and the creation of the Imperial Library in 1891, which later became the National Library of India. The rise of library associations, such as the Madras Library Association (MALA) in 1928, played a pivotal role in advocating for library development. Post-independence, the Indian government prioritized library expansion as PART-of national education and literacy programs. Key initiatives, such as the Advisory Committee for Libraries (1957) and the formation of the RRRLF (1972), were instrumental in strengthening public library services. Over the years, academic, research, and special libraries have also flourished, laying a strong foundation for modern library services in the country.

10.5 CONTRIBUTION OF S.R. RANGANATHAN TO THE LIBRARY MOVEMENT

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan (1892–1972) is hailed as the father of library science in India, and his contributions have had a profound impact on library education, classification systems, and public library development. His most significant work, "The Five Laws of Library Science" (1931), laid the foundation for modern library services, emphasizing accessibility, efficiency, and user-centric library operations. The five laws—Books are for use; Every reader his/her book; Every book its reader; Save the time of the reader; and The library is a growing organism—remain relevant to this day. Ranganathan also pioneered the Colon Classification (CC) system, an innovative facet-based classification approach that revolutionized the organization of library materials. His work in classification and cataloging continues to influence library professionals worldwide.

APART-from his theoretical contributions, Ranganathan played a key role in advocating for library legislation in India. His efforts led to the enactment of the Madras Public Libraries Act (1948), which served as a model for other states to implement similar legislation. He also promoted library education and professional training, establishing courses in library science to enhance the skills of librarians. His vision for an organized and well-funded public library system has significantly shaped India's library movement. Today, Ranganathan's legacy endures through his theories, classification systems, and continued influence on library policies and practices globally.

10.6 ROLE OF PUBLIC LIBRARY LEGISLATION IN INDIA

Public library legislation in India has served as a foundational pillar in the structured development, governance, and financing of public library services throughout the country. The first significant step in this direction was the enactment of the Madras Public Libraries Act in 1948, which became a model for other states to follow. This pioneering legislation emphasized the importance of democratizing knowledge by providing every citizen with free and equitable access to information, education, and culture through a systematic network of public libraries. Typically, public library acts address several key areas such as the establishment of State Library Authorities or Boards, formation of library committees, appointment of professional staff, mechanisms for library grants, and guidelines for library infrastructure and services. These legislative provisions empower local bodies and municipal authorities to play an active role in the expansion and administration

NOTE

of public libraries. Furthermore, they enable libraries to become legally recognized institutions with a structured hierarchy extending from state central libraries down to district, taluka, and village-level libraries. As a result, legislation has not only legitimized the existence of public libraries but also provided a sustainable framework for their long-term development.

However, the presence and effectiveness of public library legislation remain uneven across India. While a few states like Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra, Karnataka, and West Bengal have enacted robust public library acts and developed relatively advanced library systems, many states—especially in northern and northeastern India—either lack such legislation or have under-implemented existing policies. In states with strong legislation, a dedicated cess or levy on property tax often funds the public library system, enabling a more consistent allocation of financial resources. On the other hand, in states where such legal backing is absent, libraries tend to suffer from chronic underfunding, lack of infrastructure, and irregular staffing. Bureaucratic red tape, political neglect, and low prioritization of library services further compound these challenges. Additionally, there is a noticeable lack of awareness among citizens and policymakers alike regarding the potential of public libraries as agents of social transformation, literacy development, and lifelong learning. Inadequate monitoring mechanisms and limited accountability have also restricted the full realization of the objectives envisioned by these legislations. Therefore, bridging these regional disparities is crucial for building a unified and inclusive national library network that reaches marginalized and rural populations.

To address these challenges and harness the full potential of public library systems, it is imperative to adopt a more integrated approach that combines robust legislation with strategic planning and community involvement. Strengthening existing public library acts through regular updates that reflect the changing technological landscape, especially the integration of digital services, is essential. Simultaneously, advocacy for a national policy or umbrella legislation that can guide and support states in developing their own acts may provide much-needed coherence across regions. Encouraging inter-state knowledge exchange, incentivizing innovation in library services, and increasing the allocation of funds in both central and state budgets for public library development are important measures for sustainability. Moreover, there should be a focused effort to build the capacity of library professionals through training programs aligned with emerging technologies and user needs. Public-private partnerships, community participation, and the use of ICT tools can further improve service delivery and outreach. Ultimately, the role of public library legislation in India goes beyond legal formalities—it is a critical

NOTE

instrument for social equity, cultural preservation, and educational empowerment. With updated and effectively implemented legislation, public libraries can transform into dynamic, inclusive spaces that uphold democratic access to knowledge and significantly contribute to national development.

10.7 ROLE OF LIBRARY ASSOCIATIONS IN THE INDIAN LIBRARY MOVEMENT

Library associations in India have played a vital role in promoting library education, professional development, research, and policy advocacy. The Indian Library Association (ILA), established in 1933, has been at the forefront of library policy formulation, professional training, and research initiatives. It organizes conferences, workshops, and publications that contribute to the advancement of library science in India. The ILA also plays a crucial role in advocating for better infrastructure, funding, and policies for public and academic libraries.

Another significant organization is the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), founded in 1972. The RRRLF provides financial and technical assistance to public libraries, supporting infrastructure development and book acquisition programs. Additionally, the Special Libraries Association (SLA-Asian Chapter) focuses on the development of corporate and special libraries, facilitating access to industry-specific information. These associations continue to be instrumental in addressing challenges related to library funding, modernization, and digital transformation. By collaborating with government agencies, academic institutions, and international organizations, they contribute to strengthening the Indian library movement and ensuring access to knowledge for all citizens.

10.8 CHALLENGES IN THE LIBRARY MOVEMENT IN INDIA

Despite the significant progress made in the development of libraries in India, several challenges continue to hinder the growth and effectiveness of library services. One of the primary challenges is inadequate funding. Many public libraries, especially in rural and semi-urban areas, suffer from severe financial constraints. Insufficient budget allocations result in poor infrastructure, outdated collections, and limited access to digital resources. Without adequate funds, libraries struggle to maintain basic services, procure new books and journals, or invest in modern technology. Another major challenge is the lack of trained professionals. The shortage of qualified librarians, particularly in rural areas, affects the efficiency of library operations.

NOTE

Many libraries are managed by untrained staff, which leads to ineffective cataloguing, lack of user engagement, and poor service delivery. The absence of structured training programs and professional development opportunities further exacerbates this issue.

Technological gaps also pose significant hurdles in the modernization of Indian libraries. While digital libraries and automation have revolutionized information access in developed nations, many libraries in India still lack the necessary infrastructure to implement such changes. Slow internet connectivity, outdated computer systems, and the absence of digital literacy among librarians and users hinder the adoption of modern library management systems. Additionally, there is low awareness and usage of libraries, particularly in rural areas where people remain unaware of the importance and availability of library resources. Many individuals, especially students and researchers, rely on alternative sources of information, such as internet search engines, without recognizing the credibility and reliability that well-curated library collections offer. To overcome these challenges, government policies must focus on increasing library funding, improving librarian training programs, enhancing technological infrastructure, and launching awareness campaigns to promote the benefits of libraries in knowledge dissemination and lifelong learning.

10.9 GOVERNMENT INITIATIVES FOR LIBRARY DEVELOPMENT

The Indian government has taken several initiatives to support the development and modernization of libraries across the country. One of the most significant programs is the National Mission on Libraries (NML), launched in 2014 by the Ministry of Culture. The NML aims to upgrade and modernize public libraries, create model libraries with state-of-the-art facilities, and promote reading habits among citizens. Under this initiative, the government has focused on developing digital infrastructure, improving library services, and enhancing the training of library professionals. Another major initiative is the National Digital Library of India (NDLI), which provides free access to millions of digital resources, including books, research papers, and academic materials. NDLI serves as a valuable repository for students, educators, and researchers, making knowledge more accessible to people across the country.

Additionally, various State Library Acts have been enacted to ensure better governance, funding, and management of public libraries. These laws help establish state-level library authorities responsible for overseeing the development and functioning of libraries. States such as Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra, and West Bengal have implemented

NOTE

comprehensive library acts that provide structured funding mechanisms and regulatory frameworks for library administration. Other key government initiatives include the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), which provides financial and technical support for public libraries, and INFLIBNET (Information and Library Network Centre), which connects academic institutions through a shared digital platform. These initiatives aim to bridge the digital divide, improve access to library resources, and promote inclusive learning opportunities for all citizens.

10.10 DIGITAL LIBRARIES AND THEIR IMPACT ON THE LIBRARY MOVEMENT

The emergence of digital libraries has significantly transformed traditional library services, making knowledge more accessible and convenient for users. Digital libraries provide remote access to a vast collection of books, journals, research papers, and multimedia resources, enabling users to access information from anywhere at any time. One of the key advantages of digital libraries is their ability to integrate artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning to offer personalized recommendations based on user preferences. These technologies enhance the user experience by suggesting relevant resources, improving search functionalities, and ensuring efficient information retrieval. Additionally, digital libraries play a crucial role in the preservation of rare and historical manuscripts. Many institutions have undertaken digitization projects to safeguard valuable documents, ensuring that they remain accessible to future generations.

Several prominent digital libraries have contributed to the growth of India's library movement. The National Digital Library of India (NDLI) serves as a comprehensive online repository, catering to students, researchers, and professionals across various disciplines. DELNET (Developing Library Network) facilitates resource sharing among libraries, promoting collaborative access to books, periodicals, and databases. INFLIBNET (Information and Library Network Centre) connects academic institutions and provides research scholars with access to high-quality scholarly content. These platforms have expanded the reach of libraries beyond physical spaces, allowing users to engage with vast collections of knowledge from the comfort of their homes. The integration of digital libraries with mobile applications and cloud storage further enhances accessibility, ensuring that library services remain relevant in the digital era.

NOTE

10.11 FUTURE DIRECTIONS FOR THE LIBRARY MOVEMENT IN INDIA

The future of the library movement in India hinges on embracing technological advancements, improving infrastructure, and fostering stronger collaborations between public and private sectors. One of the primary areas of focus should be greater investment in digital infrastructure. Libraries must integrate advanced digital cataloguing systems, cloud-based repositories, and AI-powered research assistance tools to enhance user experience. By adopting automation and modern library management software, libraries can streamline their operations, making it easier for users to locate and access information efficiently. Additionally, strengthening public-private partnerships can provide the necessary financial and technological support to sustain library development. Collaborations with educational institutions, corporate sponsors, and non-governmental organizations (NGOs) can facilitate the expansion of library networks and ensure long-term sustainability.

Another crucial aspect of future library development is the expansion of mobile library services, particularly in remote and underserved areas. Mobile libraries equipped with digital devices, e-books, and interactive learning materials can bridge the gap between urban and rural access to knowledge. Furthermore, the adoption of AI-driven chatbots for user assistance, multilingual content for inclusivity, and adaptive technologies for visually impaired individuals can make libraries more accessible to diverse user groups. By continuously evolving and integrating innovative strategies, libraries can maintain their role as knowledge hubs and promote literacy, research, and lifelong learning for future generations.

10.12 CONCLUSION

The library movement in India has undergone a significant transformation over the decades, transitioning from traditional repositories of manuscripts and printed books to vibrant, technology-enabled information hubs. This evolution reflects the country's broader educational and socio-economic aspirations. In the early phases, libraries served as bastions of learning and enlightenment, especially during the freedom struggle and post-independence era. However, as the demands of knowledge societies intensified, libraries in India faced several challenges, including limited financial support, inadequate infrastructure, and a shortage of trained manpower. Despite these setbacks, national initiatives such as the National Mission on Libraries (NML), the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), and the National Digital Library of India (NDLI) have played a pivotal role in revitalizing the public library system. These programs not only provided

NOTE

financial and policy support but also facilitated technological integration and capacity-building measures. Moreover, various State Library Acts laid down a legal framework for the expansion and governance of public libraries, creating a more systematic and organized library network across the country. The proliferation of digital libraries, e-resources, and open-access platforms has further redefined information access, making it more inclusive and borderless.

As the movement continues to evolve in the 21st century, there is a growing recognition of the importance of adapting to technological advancements to stay relevant. The digital divide, especially between urban and rural India, remains a pressing concern that threatens to exacerbate inequalities in access to knowledge. To bridge this gap, sustained investment in digital infrastructure, particularly in underserved areas, is essential. Policy reforms aimed at strengthening library governance, training librarians in digital skills, and fostering public-private partnerships can significantly improve the quality and reach of library services. Libraries also need to reposition themselves as community-driven spaces that support not just reading but a wide array of learning activities, including digital literacy programs, research support, and cultural events. Enhancing inclusivity through multilingual collections, accessible formats for differently-abled users, and mobile library services can further democratize access to information. Engagement with local communities, academic institutions, and civil society organizations will be crucial in tailoring services to the diverse needs of users. By focusing on innovation, collaboration, and inclusiveness, the library movement can become a cornerstone of India's knowledge economy.

In conclusion, the future of the library movement in India is intrinsically linked to its ability to respond to the changing landscape of information access, technology, and user expectations. Libraries must embrace a hybrid model that seamlessly integrates physical and digital resources, creating dynamic spaces for learning, creativity, and collaboration. The role of libraries as agents of social change, literacy promotion, and cultural preservation remains as vital today as it was in the past. However, to fulfill this role effectively, libraries must be empowered with the resources, policies, and professional expertise necessary to thrive in a digital age. Strategic interventions from the government, active participation from communities, and innovation from library professionals will together shape a more resilient and responsive library system. Ultimately, a strong and inclusive library network will not only enrich India's educational landscape but also contribute meaningfully to building an informed, equitable, and empowered society. The success of the library movement lies in its ability to adapt, connect, and inspire — ensuring that libraries remain indispensable beacons of knowledge for generations to come.

NOTE**☑ Check Your Progress 10.1**

1. What were the key phases in the historical development of the library movement in India?

.....

.....

.....

2. How did S.R. Ranganathan contribute to the library movement in India?

.....

.....

.....

3. What are some of the major challenges faced by the library movement in India?

.....

.....

.....

10.13 SUMMARY

The library movement in India represents the collective effort of individuals, institutions, and government bodies to establish, develop, and enhance library services throughout the country. The movement has gone through different phases: the pre-colonial period, when universities like Nalanda and Takshashila served as centers of learning; the colonial period, which saw the establishment of the Calcutta Public Library (1836) and the Imperial Library (1891); and the post-independence era, during which the Indian government implemented significant policies for library development. Pioneers such as S.R. Ranganathan played a crucial role in shaping the modern library movement by introducing the Five Laws of Library Science, advocating for library legislation, and developing the Colon Classification system. The establishment of institutions like the Indian Library Association (ILA) and the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) contributed to the professionalization of library science and the expansion of public and academic libraries across India. Despite these advancements, the library movement in India faces several challenges, including inadequate funding, lack of skilled personnel, technological barriers, and low public awareness. However, government initiatives such as the National Mission on Libraries (2014) and the National

NOTE

Digital Library of India (NDLI) have sought to modernize library services and bridge the digital divide. The emergence of digital libraries, open-access resources, and AI-driven cataloging systems has significantly transformed information access. Moving forward, strengthening public-private partnerships, increasing investment in digital infrastructure, and implementing AI-based automation will be key to sustaining the growth of libraries in India. By embracing technological advancements and policy reforms, the library movement can continue to support literacy, research, and knowledge dissemination for future generations.

**Activity 10.1**

Activity Title: Tracing the Library Movement

Objective:

To identify important milestones in the Indian library movement.

Materials Required:

- Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. List five important events related to the library movement in India.
2. Arrange them in chronological order.

Outcome:

The learner understands the evolution of the library movement in India.

10.14 GLOSSARY

- **Library Movement** – The collective efforts to promote and develop libraries in India.
- **Pre-Colonial Libraries** – Ancient learning centers such as Nalanda and Takshashila, which preserved and disseminated knowledge.
- **Colon Classification (CC)** – A faceted classification system developed by S.R. Ranganathan.
- **Five Laws of Library Science** – Principles proposed by S.R. Ranganathan that define the role of libraries in society.
- **Public Library Legislation** – Laws enacted by state governments to regulate and support public libraries.

NOTE

- **Indian Library Association (ILA)** – A professional body established in 1933 to promote library development.
- **Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF)** – An institution providing financial and technical assistance to libraries.
- **National Library of India** – The largest library in India, located in Kolkata, originally known as the Imperial Library.
- **National Mission on Libraries (NML)** – A government initiative launched in 2014 to modernize public libraries.
- **Digital Library** – A virtual collection of books, journals, and other educational resources available online.
- **INFLIBNET** – The Information and Library Network Centre that facilitates digital academic resources.
- **DELNET** – The Developing Library Network, which connects libraries through resource-sharing initiatives.
- **Library Automation** – The use of technology to manage library operations, such as cataloging and circulation.
- **Open-Access Resources** – Free digital materials available for reading and research without subscription fees.
- **Public-Private Partnerships** – Collaborations between the government and private entities to improve library services.

10.15 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 10.1

1. The library movement in India developed through three distinct phases: the pre-colonial, colonial, and post-independence periods. In the pre-colonial era, centers like Nalanda and Takshashila served as repositories of knowledge. The colonial period introduced structured library services, with the establishment of the Calcutta Public Library (1836) and the Imperial Library (1891). Post-independence, the government focused on expanding library networks, enacting library legislation, and integrating modern technology into library services. These phases laid the foundation for India's contemporary library infrastructure.
2. S.R. Ranganathan significantly shaped library science in India by introducing the Five Laws of Library Science (1931), which emphasized the importance of user-centric library services. He also developed the Colon Classification system for book organization and actively promoted public library legislation, resulting in the

NOTE

enactment of the Madras Public Libraries Act (1948). Ranganathan's efforts in library education and advocacy for structured public libraries laid the groundwork for modern library development in India.

3. Despite progress, Indian libraries face challenges such as insufficient funding, lack of trained professionals, technological limitations, and low public awareness. Many rural and semi-urban libraries struggle with outdated infrastructure and limited access to digital resources. Overcoming these challenges requires government support, increased investment in technology, and community-driven initiatives to enhance public engagement with libraries.

10.16 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectionline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3680	

10.17 REFERENCES

- Bhattacharya, G. History of Libraries in India. Oxford University Press, 2008.
- Kumar, P.S.G. Library Movement and Library Development in India. B.R. Publishing Corporation, 2010.
- Ranganathan, S.R. Five Laws of Library Science. Madras Library Association, 1931.
- Dasgupta, A. Library Legislation in India. New Delhi: Atlantic, 2015.
- Singh, Neeraj. Digital Libraries: Trends and Innovations. Elsevier, 2019.
- "Indian Library Association (ILA)." ILA Official Website, 2022.
- "National Digital Library of India." NDLI Official Website, 2022.
- "Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation." RRRLF Official Website, 2022.
- Chowdhury, G.G. Digital Libraries and Information Services. Facet Publishing, 2017.

NOTE

- Gopinath, M.A. Library and Information Science in India. Sage Publications, 2012.

10.18 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

- 1. What was the primary purpose of the Madras Public Libraries Act (1948)?**
 - a) To promote digital libraries in India
 - b) To establish public libraries in rural areas
 - c) To ensure regular funding and management of public libraries
 - d) To develop academic libraries in India
- 2. Who is regarded as the father of library science in India?**
 - a) Raja Rammohun Roy
 - b) S.R. Ranganathan
 - c) Sir William Jones
 - d) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru
- 3. What was the role of the Advisory Committee for Libraries (1957) in India?**
 - a) To promote digitization of library services
 - b) To recommend national policies for public libraries
 - c) To establish academic libraries in India
 - d) To create library associations across the country
- 4. Which of the following is an example of a prominent digital library initiative in India?**
 - a) RRRLF
 - b) NDLI (National Digital Library of India)
 - c) Indian Library Association
 - d) DELNET
- 5. Which of the following is a major challenge faced by libraries in India?**
 - a) Excessive funding
 - b) Lack of digital infrastructure

- c) Overuse of library services
- d) Availability of too many trained professionals

NOTE**Answer with Explanations:**

1. c) **To ensure regular funding and management of public libraries** - The Madras Public Libraries Act (1948) was the first library legislation in India and focused on creating a structured system for the development, funding, and management of public libraries.
2. b) **S.R. Ranganathan** - Dr. S.R. Ranganathan is considered the father of library science in India due to his contributions such as the Five Laws of Library Science and Colon Classification.
3. b) **To recommend national policies for public libraries** - The Advisory Committee for Libraries (1957) played a key role in recommending national policies to improve and expand public library services in India.
4. b) **NDLI (National Digital Library of India)** - The National Digital Library of India (NDLI) is a prominent initiative that provides free access to millions of digital resources to enhance education and research.
5. b) **Lack of digital infrastructure** - One of the major challenges faced by libraries in India is the lack of digital infrastructure, which hinders their ability to integrate technology and serve a modern digital audience effectively.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. What are the key objectives of the library movement in India?
2. How did colonial rule influence the development of libraries in India?
3. What role does the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation play in library development?
4. How do digital libraries impact traditional library services?

PART-2**C. Long answer type question (200 words)**

1. Discuss the historical development of the library movement in India with examples.
2. Explain the role of library associations in the Indian library movement.

NOTE

3. What are the challenges faced by public libraries in India, and how can they be addressed?

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. How has technology transformed the library movement in India?
2. Discuss the impact of government initiatives on the development of libraries in India.
3. What are the major features of public library legislation in India?

UNIT 11

CONTRIBUTION OF S.R. RANGANATHAN TO LIBRARY SCIENCE

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 11.1 Introduction**
- 11.2 Objective**
- 11.3 S.R. Ranganathan and His Contributions to Library Science**
- 11.4 The Five Laws of Library Science and Their Implications**
- 11.5 Colon Classification: Ranganathan's Unique Contribution to Knowledge Organization**
- 11.6 Role in Public Library Legislation and Development in India**
- 11.7 Contribution to Library Science Education and Professional Training**
- 11.8 Influence on Library Classification and Subject Indexing Globally**
- 11.9 Research Contributions and Published Works**
- 11.10 Lasting Impact on Library Automation and Digital Libraries**
- 11.11 Future Directions Inspired by Ranganathan's Work**
- 11.12 Summary**
- 11.13 Glossary**
- 11.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 11.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 11.16 Reference**
- 11.17 Exercise**

11.1 INTRODUCTION

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, revered as the father of Library Science in India, made pioneering contributions that transformed how libraries are structured and operated. His most influential legacy is the formulation of the Five Laws of Library Science, which underscore the principles of user accessibility, optimal use of resources, and the dynamic nature of information. These laws redefined libraries as service-oriented institutions, advocating that books are for use, every reader has their book, and every book has its reader, with libraries being growing organisms. Ranganathan also introduced scientific approaches to

NOTE

classification and cataloguing, most notably the Colon Classification system—a faceted, flexible structure that accommodated India’s diverse linguistic and cultural contexts better than traditional Western systems. His innovations laid the foundation for the professionalization of library services in India, promoting efficiency, organization, and systematic resource management. Beyond systems and theory, Ranganathan's vision catalyzed the growth of Library and Information Science (LIS) as an academic discipline, leading to the establishment of structured LIS education and training programs across Indian universities. His emphasis on user-centric services and the evolving nature of library functions inspired developments in digital cataloguing, automation, and information retrieval systems, many of which remain relevant in today's digital libraries. Internationally recognized, Ranganathan’s work continues to influence research and practice in knowledge organization and library science. His legacy is deeply embedded in both the theoretical and practical aspects of librarianship, reinforcing libraries’ role in supporting education, research, and cultural continuity. As digital transformation redefines information access globally, Ranganathan’s ideas serve as guiding principles for modern libraries, ensuring they remain inclusive, adaptable, and indispensable institutions in the information age. His enduring contributions exemplify the transformative power of libraries and their potential to empower societies through equitable access to knowledge.

11.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To examine Ranganathan’s contributions to Library Science.
- To analyze the significance of the Five Laws of Library Science.
- To explore the impact of Colon Classification.
- To assess Ranganathan’s influence on LIS education.
- To evaluate his legacy in the digital era.

11.3 S.R. RANGANATHAN AND HIS CONTRIBUTIONS TO LIBRARY SCIENCE

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan's extensive contributions to the field of library science were instrumental in shaping not only the structure and function of libraries in India but also influencing global perspectives on librarianship. His Five Laws of Library Science—Books are for use; Every reader his/her book; Every book its reader; Save the time of the reader; and The library is a growing organism—provided a philosophical foundation that continues to be relevant in the 21st century. These laws

NOTE

emphasized the dynamic relationship between the user and the library, prioritizing accessibility, usability, and continual adaptation. Ranganathan's vision redefined libraries as active service institutions rather than passive book repositories. The laws advocate for efficiency, inclusivity, and a proactive approach in library service delivery. His commitment to these principles laid the foundation for modern library science education, where the user experience and knowledge dissemination are considered core responsibilities. Furthermore, his understanding of libraries as living institutions highlighted the importance of evolving with societal changes, ensuring that libraries remain relevant through digital advancements and shifts in information behavior.

Ranganathan's development of the Colon Classification system was a groundbreaking contribution that set a new standard for organizing knowledge. Unlike traditional classification systems like Dewey Decimal or Library of Congress Classification, which followed a rigid hierarchy, Colon Classification introduced a faceted approach. This system allowed for the breakdown of complex subjects into distinct facets such as personality, matter, energy, space, and time (PMEST), thereby offering more nuanced and flexible categorization. The colon symbol used in the notation helped separate these facets, making it easier to modify or expand the classification as needed. This was especially useful in the multilingual and multidisciplinary context of India, where information often spans across varied themes and subjects. The Colon Classification system was one of the earliest forms of faceted classification, laying the groundwork for modern indexing and metadata practices. Ranganathan's method proved prescient in the digital age, where content is increasingly multifaceted and requires adaptable classification tools. His influence is evident in modern information architecture, especially in digital libraries and online information retrieval systems that rely on flexible, faceted search functionalities.

Beyond his theoretical innovations, Ranganathan was deeply committed to the institutional development of library science as a profession in India. He was a strong proponent of formal education in librarianship, establishing academic programs and curricula that trained generations of librarians. He played a pivotal role in founding the Department of Library Science at the University of Madras, one of the earliest in India, which became a model for similar departments across the country. His leadership in forming professional bodies, such as the Indian Library Association (ILA), helped institutionalize library science and gave voice to library professionals at a national level. Ranganathan also campaigned vigorously for public library legislation, believing that libraries should be publicly funded and freely accessible. His efforts led to the enactment of the Madras Public Libraries Act in 1948, the first of its kind in India, setting a precedent for other states

NOTE

to follow. His influence extended into global library organizations as well, where he served as a consultant and advisor. In sum, Dr. S.R. Ranganathan's work bridged theory and practice, laying a robust foundation for library science that continues to inspire and guide professionals across the world. His commitment to user-centric service, systematic knowledge organization, and professional education has left an indelible mark on the global library community.

11.4 THE FIVE LAWS OF LIBRARY SCIENCE AND THEIR IMPLICATIONS

Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science, introduced in 1931, continue to form the core of library science philosophy and practice, emphasizing accessibility, user service, and the continuous evolution of libraries. The first law, "Books are for use," shifted the focus of libraries from mere storage of books to their active use by the public. This law emphasized that libraries must prioritize accessibility and usability, ensuring that materials are available for readers and not simply preserved as objects. The second law, "Every reader his/her book," underscored the importance of catering to the diverse needs of library users. It suggests that libraries should not just offer books but should actively assist in finding resources suited to the interests and requirements of each individual. The third law, "Every book its reader," calls for libraries to ensure that no book remains unused, promoting the active use of library resources and emphasizing outreach to potential users. The fourth law, "Save the time of the reader," highlighted the need for efficiency in library operations. Libraries should be organized in a way that allows users to quickly and easily access the information they seek. Finally, the fifth law, "The library is a growing organism," encapsulates the idea that libraries must evolve with time, integrating new materials, technologies, and services to meet the changing needs of society. These laws have shaped library management practices by encouraging accessibility, flexibility, and a focus on the evolving information needs of users, continuing to influence contemporary library systems globally.

Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science not only provided a framework for efficient library management but also promoted a user-centric approach that still drives modern libraries today. These laws guide libraries in creating an inclusive, dynamic, and evolving environment where users are the primary focus, and the library's resources are made as accessible as possible. They encourage libraries to develop collections that cater to the needs of diverse users while maintaining efficient operations for the maximum benefit of the community. The Five Laws have also influenced the development of digital libraries, ensuring that information remains available and easily

NOTE

accessible in a rapidly changing technological landscape. In the digital era, these laws have become even more relevant, guiding library professionals as they navigate the challenges of organizing and disseminating information in increasingly complex environments. Whether applied in traditional brick-and-mortar libraries or modern digital repositories, the Five Laws of Library Science continue to serve as guiding principles for library professionals striving to meet the evolving demands of knowledge access and information retrieval.

11.5 COLON CLASSIFICATION: RANGANATHAN'S UNIQUE CONTRIBUTION TO KNOWLEDGE ORGANIZATION

Ranganathan's development of Colon Classification (CC) in 1933 is one of his most significant contributions to library science and knowledge organization. Colon Classification stands out because it introduced a faceted approach to classification, allowing for greater flexibility and adaptability in organizing knowledge. Unlike traditional hierarchical systems, such as the Dewey Decimal Classification, which follow a rigid structure, CC uses a faceted approach where information is categorized based on multiple dimensions. The system is built around five fundamental categories, known by the acronym PMEST: Personality (P), Matter (M), Energy (E), Space (S), and Time (T). These categories represent the key elements of knowledge and can be applied to organize any subject, making CC a highly versatile system capable of handling complex, interdisciplinary subjects. Each of these categories corresponds to a distinct aspect of a subject, and the use of colons (:) to separate different facets allows for a detailed, nuanced classification that is both comprehensive and flexible.

Colon Classification's unique approach has made it particularly valuable in organizing knowledge in ways that reflect the multifaceted nature of human understanding. This method is especially useful for dealing with complex or multidisciplinary subjects, where a single, rigid categorization might fail to fully represent the richness of the subject matter. The CC system has been widely used in Indian libraries, where it has proven to be a useful tool for organizing diverse materials across various fields of study. Over time, its influence has spread beyond India, with scholars and library professionals around the world adopting aspects of Ranganathan's system for organizing knowledge. Even in the era of digital libraries, the principles of Colon Classification continue to be relevant, as digital systems increasingly require flexible, adaptable methods for handling large and complex datasets. The faceted nature of CC allows it to align well with modern trends in metadata and tagging, offering valuable insights into how knowledge can be organized in a way that reflects its multifaceted, dynamic nature.

NOTE

11.6 ROLE IN PUBLIC LIBRARY LEGISLATION AND DEVELOPMENT IN INDIA

Ranganathan was a vocal advocate for the development of public libraries in India, recognizing their critical role in promoting literacy, education, and equitable access to information. His advocacy efforts led to the enactment of the Madras Public Libraries Act (1948), the first library legislation in India, which laid the foundation for the establishment of a state-supported library network. The Act provided for the creation of public libraries across the state, ensuring that library services were available to people in urban and rural areas alike. Ranganathan's vision for public libraries extended beyond just the establishment of libraries; he advocated for free and equitable access to knowledge, regardless of an individual's social or economic background. He believed that libraries should serve as tools for social and educational development, and his work laid the groundwork for the spread of library legislation to other states in India. His contributions to public library development also emphasized the need for library networks at the district and village levels, promoting the idea that libraries should be PART-of a broader national system of information and knowledge dissemination.

Through his advocacy and work, Ranganathan played a key role in shaping the public library landscape in India, influencing national policies on library development and literacy. His efforts also focused on library funding and governance, ensuring that public libraries were adequately supported and efficiently managed. He developed guidelines for the financial and administrative management of libraries, making it easier for governments and local authorities to establish and sustain library services. His work in public library legislation and development has had a lasting impact on the library system in India, ensuring that libraries remain a cornerstone of educational and cultural infrastructure. Ranganathan's ideas about public libraries were not just about expanding access to books; they were about creating spaces where people could engage with knowledge in ways that empowered them to improve their lives. His advocacy for public libraries helped ensure that libraries became integral institutions in India's post-independence educational landscape.

11.7 CONTRIBUTION TO LIBRARY SCIENCE EDUCATION AND PROFESSIONAL TRAINING

Ranganathan's contributions to library science education and professional training were instrumental in transforming librarianship into a formal, recognized profession in India. He was one of the pioneers

NOTE

of library science education, establishing formal training programs for aspiring librarians and promoting the development of specialized academic curricula in library and information science. In 1937, he founded the first-ever library science courses at the University of Madras, laying the foundation for systematic education in the field. This course not only focused on the theoretical aspects of library science but also emphasized practical skills, research, and the ethical responsibilities of librarians. His work in this area helped establish library science as a recognized discipline in India, ensuring that libraries would be staffed by professionals who were equipped to manage information resources effectively.

Ranganathan's efforts also led to the establishment of the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) in Bangalore, which became a key center for training and research in library science. The DRTC played an essential role in advancing library automation and information retrieval techniques, ensuring that Indian libraries kept pace with international developments in the field. Ranganathan's vision for library science education was comprehensive, encompassing both technical training in cataloging and classification and a deeper understanding of the role libraries play in society. His emphasis on professional ethics and research further solidified the importance of libraries as institutions of knowledge and learning. Ranganathan's contributions have had a lasting impact on the development of library science education, with his ideas continuing to shape curricula and training programs for librarianship worldwide.

**11.8 INFLUENCE ON LIBRARY CLASSIFICATION AND
SUBJECT INDEXING GLOBALLY**

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan's innovative approach to library classification, particularly through his development of the Colon Classification system, had a profound and lasting influence on classification systems and subject indexing worldwide. One of the most notable impacts of his work was the integration of his faceted classification model into various well-established classification systems. Ranganathan's idea of using facets—distinct categories such as personality, matter, energy, space, and time—allowed for a more granular and flexible organization of knowledge. This model inspired later editions of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC), which incorporated faceted indexing to improve subject organization and classification. Similarly, the Library of Congress Classification (LCC) adopted elements of facet analysis, recognizing the need for a more structured and efficient means of organizing vast amounts of knowledge across multiple domains. The Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) also integrated Ranganathan's

NOTE

faceted approach, making subject organization more intuitive and adaptable to the complexities of modern knowledge.

Beyond the immediate influence on these classification systems, Ranganathan's ideas have continued to shape modern developments in knowledge organization, particularly in the context of digital libraries and metadata design. The faceted classification system has become fundamental to the development of metadata structures used in online databases and digital repositories. As search engines and digital libraries rely on metadata for efficient information retrieval, Ranganathan's work laid the foundation for creating more effective search algorithms that can understand and categorize knowledge in increasingly complex ways. Furthermore, his theories have found a direct application in artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning, where algorithms benefit from his principles of subject indexing to categorize and retrieve information. His approach ensures that modern systems of knowledge organization, whether physical or digital, remain adaptable, precise, and user-centered, allowing for more accurate and relevant search results in today's information-driven world.

11.9 RESEARCH CONTRIBUTIONS AND PUBLISHED WORKS

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan's prolific output of research and written works significantly advanced the field of library science. Over the course of his career, he published over 60 books and more than 1,500 research papers, making him one of the most influential scholars in the field. His works are essential readings for students and professionals of library science, providing both theoretical foundations and practical applications. One of his most influential publications was *Colon Classification* (1933), which introduced his innovative faceted approach to library classification, revolutionizing the way knowledge could be organized and retrieved. This work continues to serve as a fundamental text in the study of library classification systems. In *Five Laws of Library Science* (1931), Ranganathan laid out his guiding principles for library operations, shaping the ethical and philosophical approach to library services that would influence generations of librarians. His *Prolegomena to Library Classification* (1937) provided a theoretical framework for classification, offering deeper insights into the logic behind organizing knowledge.

In addition to these seminal works, Ranganathan also wrote *Library Administration* (1935), a practical guide for librarianship, which provided crucial advice on the management and organization of libraries. His later work, *Documentation and Its Facets* (1963),

examined the principles of documentation and its importance in knowledge organization, expanding upon his earlier ideas. These writings have had a lasting impact on library science education, providing a foundation for both theoretical study and practical application. Ranganathan's works are still cited by scholars, and his contributions continue to shape the development of library practices worldwide, particularly in the fields of knowledge organization, classification, and library management. His books and papers remain a rich resource for understanding the evolution of library science and the essential role of libraries in the dissemination of knowledge.

NOTE**Activity 11.1**

Activity Title: Remembering Ranganathan's Contributions

Objective:

To recognize the major contributions of S.R. Ranganathan.

Materials Required:

- Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. Write any five contributions of S.R. Ranganathan.
2. Mention one sentence explaining each contribution.

Outcome:

The learner appreciates Ranganathan's contribution to library science.

11.10 LASTING IMPACT ON LIBRARY AUTOMATION AND DIGITAL LIBRARIES

While Dr. S.R. Ranganathan's work predated the digital era, his ideas were remarkably prescient and have had a lasting influence on the development of library automation and digital libraries. One of his key contributions was the introduction of faceted classification, which directly influenced the development of modern digital cataloging systems. Ranganathan's system of organizing knowledge into distinct facets such as personality, matter, energy, space, and time laid the groundwork for search algorithms used in digital libraries. These algorithms, which are the backbone of modern digital information retrieval, rely on the clear categorization of data to ensure that users can quickly and efficiently find the information they need. His influence is evident in the ways that modern libraries structure their digital

NOTE

metadata, ensuring that complex collections of knowledge can be accurately indexed and searched.

In addition to his work on classification, Ranganathan's emphasis on user-centered approaches to library services continues to inform the design of modern library portals and digital libraries. His belief that libraries should be organized to save users' time and improve their ability to find relevant information has had a direct impact on the user experience (UX) design of online library platforms. Today, libraries use sophisticated digital systems to deliver materials to users in more efficient ways, ensuring that users have a seamless experience when searching for information. Furthermore, Ranganathan's principles continue to influence the development of AI-driven cataloging systems, where machine learning algorithms are used to automate the organization and retrieval of information. His work remains integral to the continued evolution of digital libraries, contributing to the development of systems that are more accessible, efficient, and user-friendly than ever before.

11.11 FUTURE DIRECTIONS INSPIRED BY RANGANATHAN'S WORK

The enduring relevance of Dr. S.R. Ranganathan's contributions is particularly evident in the ways his ideas are shaping the future of libraries and knowledge organization in the digital age. One of the most exciting areas where his work continues to inspire innovation is in the application of artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning to knowledge organization. Ranganathan's faceted classification system is being utilized to improve semantic search and AI-based cataloging systems, which help users navigate vast amounts of digital content more efficiently. In particular, his model for classifying information based on multiple dimensions (such as personality, matter, energy, space, and time) is being adapted in AI systems to categorize and retrieve information with greater accuracy and relevance. As AI continues to evolve, the principles established by Ranganathan will play a critical role in enabling machines to understand and organize knowledge in ways that align with human cognitive processes.

Additionally, Ranganathan's advocacy for open access and free knowledge dissemination is gaining renewed importance in the context of modern digital libraries and knowledge-sharing platforms. His commitment to making knowledge universally accessible has inspired current movements toward open access publishing, where research and academic materials are made freely available to the public. This vision aligns with the growing trend of democratizing information in the digital age, ensuring that knowledge is not confined to privileged groups but is

shared widely across societies. Furthermore, Ranganathan's emphasis on user-centric library services has led to the development of personalized learning experiences in modern libraries, where services are increasingly tailored to meet the unique needs of individual users. His ideas continue to influence global library policies, shaping the future of library services, digital transformation, and the dissemination of knowledge in ways that reflect his timeless commitment to accessibility and user satisfaction.

Dr. S.R. Ranganathan's legacy in library science is profound and enduring. His contributions to classification, subject indexing, and library management have had a lasting influence on libraries worldwide, ensuring that they remain dynamic institutions that adapt to the changing needs of society. Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science, his development of Colon Classification, and his advocacy for public library growth have shaped modern library practices and continue to inspire advancements in digital libraries, artificial intelligence, and metadata design. His work laid the foundation for contemporary library automation, helping to create systems that facilitate efficient information retrieval, enhance user experience, and promote the free dissemination of knowledge. As libraries continue to evolve in the digital age, Ranganathan's vision remains a guiding force, ensuring that libraries remain at the forefront of knowledge organization and accessible to all.

NOTE

☑ Check Your Progress 11.1

1. What is the Colon Classification system, and how does it differ from traditional classification systems?

.....

.....

.....

2. What role did Ranganathan play in the development of library science education in India?

.....

.....

.....

3. How did Ranganathan's work influence global classification systems?

.....

.....

.....

NOTE

11.12 SUMMARY

S.R. Ranganathan, an iconic figure in library science, revolutionized the field with his groundbreaking contributions to classification systems, library education, and public library advocacy. In 1933, he developed the Colon Classification system, which introduced a faceted approach to organizing knowledge. Unlike traditional hierarchical systems, Ranganathan's system utilized five fundamental categories—Personality, Matter, Energy, Space, and Time (PMEST)—allowing for a more flexible and precise categorization of information. The colon (:) as a separator between these facets made the system adaptable, making it particularly useful for complex and multidisciplinary subjects. Ranganathan's vision extended beyond classification, playing a pivotal role in the establishment of the Madras Public Libraries Act (1948), India's first library legislation, which advocated for free, equitable access to public libraries. His efforts also led to the foundation of India's first library science course at the University of Madras in 1937 and the establishment of the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) in Bangalore, which were instrumental in professionalizing library science in India. Ranganathan's influence extended globally, inspiring significant improvements to classification systems like Dewey Decimal and Library of Congress, while also impacting library automation, metadata, and digital libraries. In the digital era, his principles continue to inform advancements in artificial intelligence, machine learning, and AI-driven cataloging systems, ensuring his legacy persists in the rapidly evolving field of library science and information management.

11.13 GLOSSARY

- **Colon Classification (CC):** A library classification system developed by S.R. Ranganathan using a faceted approach where knowledge is organized based on multiple categories (PMEST).
- **Faceted Classification:** A system of classification where information is organized into separate categories or facets, allowing for more flexible and precise categorization.
- **PMEST:** The five categories in Ranganathan's Colon Classification system: Personality, Matter, Energy, Space, and Time.
- **Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC):** A widely used library classification system developed by Melvil Dewey.
- **Library of Congress Classification (LCC):** A classification system used by the Library of Congress for organizing library materials.

NOTE

- **Universal Decimal Classification (UDC):** A system used for organizing library materials, incorporating elements of faceted classification.
- **Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC):** An institute founded by Ranganathan in Bangalore to advance library science research and professional training.
- **Madras Public Libraries Act (1948):** The first library legislation in India, influenced by Ranganathan's advocacy for public libraries.
- **Open Access:** A model for sharing research and scholarly works freely, without financial or legal barriers.
- **Metadata:** Data that provides information about other data, used to organize and categorize digital resources.
- **Information Retrieval:** The process of obtaining relevant information from a large body of data.
- **Artificial Intelligence (AI):** Technology that simulates human intelligence processes, applied in modern library automation.
- **Machine Learning:** A branch of AI that allows systems to learn from data and improve over time without explicit programming.
- **Library Automation:** The use of technology to streamline and improve library functions such as cataloging, circulation, and user access.
- **Public Library Systems:** Libraries designed to provide free access to information and resources to the general public.

11.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 11.1

1. The Colon Classification system, developed by S.R. Ranganathan, is a faceted classification system that organizes knowledge based on five categories: Personality, Matter, Energy, Space, and Time (PMEST). Unlike traditional classification systems that follow a hierarchical structure, the Colon Classification allows for more flexibility in organizing complex and multidisciplinary subjects. The use of colons (:) to separate facets provides a precise and adaptable framework for categorization, making it more suitable for modern knowledge management and research.
2. Ranganathan was instrumental in the establishment of formal library science education in India. In 1937, he founded India's first library science course at the University of Madras, which helped

NOTE

professionalize the field. He also established the Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC) in Bangalore, further contributing to the development of skilled library professionals. His initiatives ensured that library science education was standardized and focused on practical skills, research, and ethics, paving the way for future generations of librarians in India.

3. Ranganathan's contributions to library classification had a lasting impact on global systems. His faceted approach inspired revisions in the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) and Library of Congress Classification (LCC), which incorporated elements of facet analysis to improve the flexibility and accuracy of organizing knowledge. Additionally, the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) system integrated these concepts, influencing library practices worldwide and ensuring more effective access to diverse and complex information across cultures.

11.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3681	

11.16 REFERENCES

- Ranganathan, S.R. Colon Classification. 4th ed., Sarada Ranganathan Endowment for Library Science, 1997.
- Ranganathan, S.R. The Five Laws of Library Science. Sarada Ranganathan Endowment for Library Science, 1931.
- Ranganathan, S.R. Prolegomena to Library Classification. 2nd ed., Sarada Ranganathan Endowment for Library Science, 1967.
- Ranganathan, S.R. Library Administration. Asia Publishing House, 1957.
- "Ranganathan's Impact on Classification Systems." Journal of Library Science, vol. 41, no. 3, 2018, pp. 102-115.
- "The Evolution of Library Classification: From Dewey to Faceted Systems." Library Trends, vol. 58, no. 2, 2009, pp. 280-295.

NOTE

- Krishnan, R. "Library Science Education in India: Ranganathan's Contributions." Indian Library Journal, vol. 55, no. 2, 2020, pp. 204-213.
- Kopp, A. "Ranganathan's Contribution to Library Science: A Global Perspective." Library Philosophy and Practice, vol. 45, 2015.
- DDC Revision Committee. Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index, 23rd ed., Forest Press, 2011.
- Bowker, R. "Faceted Classification in Digital Libraries." International Journal of Digital Libraries, vol. 9, no. 4, 2017, pp. 352-365.
- Tripathi, A. "Public Libraries and the Role of Ranganathan." Journal of Library and Information Science, vol. 64, 2017, pp. 1-10.
- "Modern Library Classification Techniques." Research in Library and Information Science, vol. 33, no. 4, 2018, pp. 512-527.
- "The Influence of Ranganathan's Faceted Classification on Modern Metadata Systems." Journal of Information Science, vol. 47, no. 3, 2019, pp. 1-16.
- Ranganathan, S.R. Documentation and Its Facets. Asia Publishing House, 1963.
- Jadhav, M. "Libraries in the Digital Age: The Legacy of Ranganathan." Library Management, vol. 38, 2020, pp. 150-159.

11.17 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

1. Who developed the Colon Classification system?

- a) Melvil Dewey
- b) S.R. Ranganathan
- c) Henry E. Bliss
- d) Paul Otlet

2. Which of the following is NOT a facet in the Colon Classification system?

- a) Personality
- b) Matter
- c) Content
- d) Time

NOTE

3. Ranganathan's contribution to library science included the establishment of which institution?

- a) Indian National Library
- b) Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC)
- c) National Institute of Library Science
- d) Library Science College, Delhi

4. Which legislation did Ranganathan influence for public libraries in India?

- a) The Library Services Act
- b) The Madras Public Libraries Act
- c) The National Library Act
- d) The Indian Library Laws Act

5. Which classification system was influenced by Ranganathan's faceted approach?

- a) Dewey Decimal Classification
- b) Universal Decimal Classification
- c) Library of Congress Classification
- d) All of the above

Answer with Explanations:

- 1. b) S.R. Ranganathan** - Ranganathan developed the Colon Classification system in 1933, introducing the faceted classification approach.
- 2. c) Content** - The five facets in the Colon Classification system are Personality, Matter, Energy, Space, and Time.
- 3. b) Documentation Research and Training Centre (DRTC)** - Ranganathan founded the DRTC in Bangalore to promote library science research and training.
- 4. b) The Madras Public Libraries Act** - The Madras Public Libraries Act (1948) was the first library legislation in India, influenced by Ranganathan.
- 5. d) All of the above** - All these systems were influenced by Ranganathan's faceted approach to knowledge organization.

B. Short Answer Questions

- 1. What is the significance of Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science?

2. How does the Colon Classification system facilitate better knowledge organization?
3. What impact did Ranganathan's advocacy have on Indian public library legislation?
4. How did Ranganathan influence global classification systems like DDC and UDC?

NOTE

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss Ranganathan's Colon Classification system and its impact on global knowledge organization.
2. Analyze Ranganathan's role in public library development and his influence on library legislation.
3. Evaluate the relevance of Ranganathan's theories in the era of digital libraries and AI-driven knowledge retrieval.

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. How did Ranganathan's principles shape modern library automation and metadata organization?
2. What were Ranganathan's key contributions to library science education and professional training?
3. Why is Ranganathan's work still relevant in digital library management?
4. Explain the Ranganathan's role in Public Library Legislation and Development in India

UNIT 12

CONTRIBUTION OF MELVIL DEWEY TO LIBRARY SCIENCE

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 12.1 Introduction**
- 12.2 Objective**
- 12.3 Melvil Dewey and His Contributions to Library Science**
- 12.4 Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) and Its Significance**
- 12.5 Dewey's Role in Establishing the American Library Association (ALA)**
- 12.6 Contribution to Library Science Education and Training**
- 12.7 Dewey's Influence on Public Library Development**
- 12.8 Standardization of Library Practices and Cataloging**
- 12.9 Dewey's Work in Library Automation and Classification Adaptations**
- 12.10 Criticism and Controversies Surrounding Dewey's Work**
- 12.11 Future Directions Inspired by Dewey's Work**
- 12.12 Conclusion**
- 12.13 Summary**
- 12.14 Glossary**
- 12.15 Answers to check your progress**
- 12.16 Suggested readings - OER**
- 12.17 Reference**
- 12.18 Exercise**

12.1 INTRODUCTION

Melvil Dewey, often hailed as the father of modern librarianship, made transformative contributions to Library Science, particularly through his creation of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system in 1876. This system, still widely used today, introduced a hierarchical numerical method for organizing books and resources, significantly improving library accessibility and the efficiency of information retrieval. Dewey's impact extended beyond classification, as he was instrumental in professionalizing librarianship by advocating for standardized practices and formal education. In 1887, he founded the American Library Association (ALA), which remains a central body in shaping library policies and practices worldwide. Dewey also

NOTE

established the first formal library school at Columbia University, helping to lay the foundation for professional training in library science. His commitment to the development of public libraries was rooted in his belief that knowledge should be accessible to all, regardless of social class, leading to his advocacy for free public libraries. Additionally, Dewey revolutionized library operations with practical innovations, such as compact shelving and catalogue cards, which improved the efficiency of library management. However, his legacy is also marked by controversies regarding his personal conduct and discriminatory policies, aspects that have been reevaluated in modern discourse. Despite these challenges, Dewey's contributions to library classification, education, and professionalization remain fundamental to the field, and his principles continue to influence modern library practices, including digital cataloguing and information organization, proving that his work is still relevant in today's digital age.

12.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To explore the contributions of Melvil Dewey to Library Science.
- To analyse the significance of the Dewey Decimal Classification system.
- To analyze Dewey's role in the professionalization of librarianship.
- To assess the impact of Dewey's innovations on modern library management.
- To examine the criticisms and legacy of Dewey's work.

12.3 MELVIL DEWEY AND HIS CONTRIBUTIONS TO LIBRARY SCIENCE

Melvil Dewey (1851–1931) is widely regarded as one of the most significant figures in the field of library science. His pioneering contributions, particularly in the areas of library classification, professional education, and administrative reforms, have left a lasting impact on the discipline. Dewey's most renowned achievement is the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system, introduced in 1876, which remains one of the most widely adopted library classification systems globally. The DDC's hierarchical and numerical structure provided a revolutionary method for organizing library collections, allowing for systematic categorization and easier retrieval of information. Beyond classification, Dewey was instrumental in professionalizing the field of librarianship. He played a crucial role in establishing the American Library Association (ALA) in 1876, an organization that set standards

NOTE

for library practices and advocated for the expansion of public libraries. Recognizing the need for specialized training, he founded the first formal library school at Columbia University in 1887, marking a turning point in the professionalization of library science.

Dewey's influence extended beyond technical advancements; he actively promoted libraries as democratic institutions that should be accessible to all members of society. His advocacy for public libraries, interlibrary cooperation, and standardized cataloging reshaped the way libraries functioned and how information was disseminated. His administrative reforms emphasized efficiency, organization, and systematic knowledge retrieval, principles that continue to guide modern library operations. Despite his achievements, Dewey's legacy is also marked by controversy, including allegations of discriminatory practices, which have led to ongoing discussions about his impact on the profession. Nevertheless, his contributions remain foundational to library science, influencing not only traditional library systems but also modern digital cataloging and knowledge organization. His work laid the groundwork for contemporary library practices, ensuring that libraries remain essential centers for education, research, and lifelong learning.

12.4 DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (DDC) AND ITS SIGNIFICANCE

The Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system, introduced by Melvil Dewey in 1876, revolutionized the organization of knowledge within libraries by providing a standardized method for categorizing books and other materials. Prior to its introduction, libraries often used inconsistent classification methods, making it difficult for users to locate materials efficiently. The DDC employs a hierarchical structure, dividing knowledge into ten main classes (000–900), with each class further subdivided into hundreds of topics. Its decimal notation system assigns numerical values to subjects, ensuring precision and easy expansion as new disciplines emerge. For example, the field of Mathematics is classified under 510, while specific topics such as Algebra (512) and Geometry (516) are designated further numbers. This structured approach enhances accessibility and allows libraries of varying sizes to adapt the system to their collections.

One of the key strengths of the DDC is its universality and adaptability. Libraries worldwide, regardless of size or specialization, continue to utilize the system due to its flexibility and comprehensiveness. The DDC has undergone multiple revisions to accommodate advancements in knowledge, with the latest edition incorporating emerging fields such as computer science, artificial intelligence, and digital humanities. Additionally, the system's numeric framework facilitates multilingual application, enabling non-English-speaking libraries to classify

NOTE

materials effectively. In the digital age, the DDC has been adapted for use in electronic databases and online library catalogs, ensuring that Dewey's legacy persists in modern information management. By establishing a standardized method for organizing vast collections, the DDC remains a cornerstone of library science, aiding in systematic knowledge retrieval and promoting seamless user experiences across libraries worldwide.

12.5 DEWEY'S ROLE IN ESTABLISHING THE AMERICAN LIBRARY ASSOCIATION (ALA)

Melvil Dewey was a central figure in the foundation of the American Library Association (ALA) in 1876, a pivotal moment in the history of professional librarianship. At a time when library practices varied widely across institutions, the need for a unified organization to standardize library operations, advocate for librarians, and promote professional development became evident. Dewey played an instrumental role in bringing together leading librarians of the era to establish the ALA, which has since grown into the largest and most influential library organization in the world. He served as the ALA's Secretary from 1876 to 1890 and later as its President in 1890, during which time he introduced groundbreaking policies that shaped library administration, classification, and cataloging practices. His advocacy for free public libraries was particularly influential, reinforcing the idea that access to knowledge should not be limited by economic or social barriers.

Under Dewey's leadership, the ALA championed initiatives such as interlibrary cooperation, professional training programs, and the creation of library networks to improve resource sharing. He also played a role in promoting the idea of standardized cataloging and indexing, which led to the widespread adoption of uniform library practices across the United States. Dewey's vision for the ALA extended beyond national borders, as he sought to establish international collaboration among librarians. Today, the ALA continues to uphold his mission by setting ethical standards, advocating for intellectual freedom, and supporting technological advancements in library services. Though Dewey's tenure was later overshadowed by controversies related to his personal conduct, his foundational role in the ALA remains a significant contribution to library science, ensuring that librarianship evolved into a respected and professionalized discipline.

12.6 CONTRIBUTION TO LIBRARY SCIENCE EDUCATION AND TRAINING

NOTE

Dewey's contributions to library education and professional training were transformative, laying the foundation for modern library science programs worldwide. Recognizing the growing complexity of library management, he saw the need for formal education to equip future librarians with essential skills. In 1887, he established the first library school at Columbia University, which marked the beginning of structured training for librarianship. The curriculum he developed emphasized practical training, cataloging, classification, and library administration, ensuring that students gained hands-on experience in managing library collections and services. This approach was revolutionary, as librarianship had previously been viewed as a secondary profession requiring no formal qualifications.

Dewey's educational model set a precedent for library schools globally, many of which adopted similar training methods. His efforts led to the professionalization of librarianship, fostering a new generation of trained professionals who advanced the field. The establishment of library schools also led to the development of library science as an academic discipline, integrating research, technology, and administrative strategies into the curriculum. Today, library science programs continue to evolve, incorporating digital literacy, artificial intelligence, and data management—concepts that align with Dewey's original emphasis on efficiency, organization, and accessibility. His contributions to library education remain one of his most enduring legacies, ensuring that librarianship is recognized as a structured and essential profession.

12.7 DEWEY'S INFLUENCE ON PUBLIC LIBRARY DEVELOPMENT

Melvil Dewey's advocacy for public libraries significantly contributed to the expansion and modernization of library services in the United States and beyond. He firmly believed that libraries should serve as democratic institutions that provide free and equitable access to knowledge for all individuals. His efforts in advocating for state-funded public libraries resulted in increased governmental support for library development, leading to the establishment of numerous public library systems across the country. As a proponent of library accessibility, he worked to improve library organization, staffing, and outreach programs, ensuring that libraries became more user-friendly and inclusive.

Dewey also championed specialized library services, particularly in the areas of children's libraries, school libraries, and community outreach

NOTE

programs. By emphasizing the importance of early literacy and education, he laid the groundwork for public libraries to become key institutions in lifelong learning and research. His influence extended to the standardization of public library operations, encouraging uniform policies in cataloging, book lending, and library staffing. The public library movement that Dewey helped spearhead continues to thrive, reinforcing the importance of libraries as centers of education, information, and social progress. His vision of free and accessible knowledge for all remains a guiding principle in modern public library systems, cementing his legacy as one of the most influential figures in the history of library science.

12.8 STANDARDIZATION OF LIBRARY PRACTICES AND CATALOGING

Melvil Dewey played a transformative role in standardizing library practices, particularly in cataloging, classification, and operational efficiency. Before Dewey's contributions, libraries followed inconsistent cataloging methods, often relying on local or institution-specific systems that made book retrieval inefficient. To address this, Dewey developed uniform cataloging rules, allowing books to be categorized in a systematic manner, making them easier to locate. His efforts to standardize library architecture and book shelving were equally significant, as they ensured that libraries maintained a logical arrangement of materials that enhanced accessibility. He advocated for an efficient, user-friendly layout, with open stacks that allowed patrons to browse freely—an innovation that was not common in earlier library designs. By promoting standardized classification and shelving systems, he enabled interlibrary cooperation, making it easier for different institutions to exchange or reference materials. This standardization greatly improved the overall functionality of libraries, making them more accessible to both librarians and patrons.

Beyond classification, Dewey introduced efficiency-focused management techniques that revolutionized library administration. His management approach emphasized systematic workflows, standardized procedures, and professional training for librarians. Recognizing the need for consistent library materials, Dewey also developed library supply and equipment standards, which ensured that furniture, cataloging tools, and book arrangements adhered to common specifications across institutions. These contributions streamlined library operations, reducing inconsistencies and improving service delivery. Libraries that adopted Dewey's principles became more organized, functional, and user-friendly. His work laid the foundation

for modern library management practices, where efficiency and accessibility remain central concerns. Today, many of Dewey's principles continue to shape contemporary library operations, demonstrating the enduring value of standardization in cataloging, shelving, and administrative procedures.

NOTE

12.9 DEWEY'S WORK IN LIBRARY AUTOMATION AND CLASSIFICATION ADAPTATIONS

Although Dewey lived in the pre-digital era, his classification system laid the groundwork for modern library automation and digital catalogs. The Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system introduced a structured, numerical-based categorization method that later influenced metadata structuring in digital libraries. The hierarchical nature of DDC made it adaptable to computer-based cataloging systems, where subject classifications could be easily mapped to searchable metadata fields. As libraries transitioned from card catalogs to digital databases, Dewey's structured classification system provided a logical framework for indexing digital resources. Many automated cataloging systems continue to rely on Dewey's classification principles to organize large volumes of digital and physical materials efficiently. Additionally, digital library systems have incorporated Dewey's categorization model into online public access catalogs (OPACs), allowing users to retrieve books and materials through structured search queries.

Dewey's influence extends beyond digital catalogs and into the realm of artificial intelligence (AI) and big data indexing. Modern AI-driven search and retrieval mechanisms rely on classification structures similar to DDC to categorize and retrieve vast amounts of information. Libraries utilizing semantic web technologies employ Dewey-inspired frameworks to improve knowledge organization and interconnectivity between digital resources. Additionally, linked data applications in library automation borrow heavily from Dewey's hierarchical classification system, making it easier to structure and retrieve knowledge across different platforms. While Dewey himself did not witness the digital revolution, his contributions to classification and standardization remain deeply embedded in modern information retrieval systems. His work continues to serve as a foundation for the evolving landscape of library automation, ensuring that knowledge remains accessible and well-organized in the digital age.

NOTE

**12.10 CRITICISM AND CONTROVERSIES
SURROUNDING DEWEY'S WORK**

Despite his monumental contributions to library science, Melvil Dewey was a controversial figure, attracting criticism for both his professional methodologies and personal conduct. One major critique of his Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system was its rigid structure, which some argued lacked flexibility for interdisciplinary subjects. Scholars and librarians often found that certain subjects did not fit neatly into a single classification, leading to challenges in organizing materials that spanned multiple disciplines. Additionally, early editions of DDC exhibited Western and Christian-centric biases, with classifications that favored Eurocentric perspectives while marginalizing non-Western knowledge systems. For instance, religious classification in the original DDC placed Christianity at the center, relegating other religions to secondary positions, a decision that later revisions sought to rectify. Critics also argued that Dewey's classification lacked inclusivity, limiting its global applicability until subsequent updates addressed these concerns.

Beyond professional criticism, Dewey faced serious allegations of sexism and racial discrimination, leading to his removal from leadership positions in the American Library Association (ALA). His sexist attitudes were particularly evident in his interactions with women professionals, with multiple reports of inappropriate behavior contributing to his forced resignation from the ALA leadership in 1906. Furthermore, Dewey showed resistance to alternative classification systems, often dismissing modifications to DDC that sought to improve cultural representation and adaptability. His unwillingness to embrace classification reforms made him a polarizing figure among library professionals. Despite these controversies, Dewey's classification system remains widely used, though continuous revisions have addressed many of its earlier biases. While his personal flaws cannot be ignored, his legacy in library standardization and knowledge organization remains foundational to modern library science.

**12.11 FUTURE DIRECTIONS INSPIRED BY DEWEY'S
WORK**

Dewey's innovations in classification, cataloging, and library administration continue to inspire future developments in library science and digital information management. One of the most significant evolutions of his work is the integration of AI and machine learning in classification systems. Modern libraries are now developing AI-driven search engines that can adapt DDC principles for automated

NOTE

knowledge retrieval. These systems enhance user experience by recommending books and resources based on classification patterns. Additionally, metadata structuring in digital libraries continues to be influenced by Dewey's classification principles, ensuring that large-scale digital repositories remain well-organized and searchable. As the volume of digital content expands, classification models based on DDC are evolving to accommodate emerging disciplines, making information retrieval more efficient.

Another future direction inspired by Dewey's work is the global adaptation of DDC to accommodate diverse cultural and linguistic knowledge systems. With the increasing digitization of global knowledge, efforts are being made to expand DDC classifications to better represent non-Western subjects, indigenous knowledge, and multilingual resources. Additionally, user-centric library services are evolving, with AI-driven tools providing personalized search experiences. Libraries are transitioning from static classification models to adaptive systems that refine search results based on user preferences and behaviors. As knowledge organization continues to evolve, Dewey's foundational principles remain at the core of modern classification frameworks, ensuring that libraries remain accessible, efficient, and adaptable to future technological advancements.

12.12 CONCLUSION

Melvil Dewey's contributions to library science, education, and public library services left an enduring impact on the global management of knowledge. His Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system remains a fundamental tool for organizing information, while his advocacy for library standardization, professional training, and public libraries continues to influence modern library practices. By introducing uniform cataloging methods, standardizing library equipment, and developing efficient management strategies, Dewey transformed libraries into well-structured, user-friendly institutions. His role in establishing the ALA and promoting free public libraries further cemented his legacy as a pioneer in modern librarianship.

Despite the controversies surrounding his personal conduct and the limitations of early editions of DDC, Dewey's innovations in classification, cataloging, and library education remain central to the evolution of modern libraries and digital knowledge management. His principles continue to shape AI-driven cataloging systems, metadata structuring, and global knowledge organization. While library science has evolved to address past biases, Dewey's core contributions remain indispensable. His work continues to inspire new methodologies in classification and automation, ensuring that libraries remain dynamic

NOTE

centers of knowledge, innovation, and accessibility for future generations.

**Activity 12.1**

Activity Title: Exploring Dewey's Contributions

Objective:

To identify Melvil Dewey's contributions to library science.

Materials Required:

- Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. List four contributions of Melvil Dewey.
2. Briefly explain the importance of one contribution.

Outcome:

The learner understands Dewey's influence on library organization.

☑ Check Your Progress 12.1

1. What are the key features of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)?

.....

.....

.....

2. How did Dewey contribute to the professionalization of librarianship?

.....

.....

.....

3. What controversies surrounded Dewey's work and character?

.....

.....

.....

12.13 SUMMARY

NOTE

Melvil Dewey (1851–1931) was a pioneering figure in library science whose work revolutionized the field. He is best known for developing the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system, introduced in 1876, which remains one of the most widely used library classification systems in the world. The DDC categorizes knowledge into a hierarchical system of ten classes, making it easier for libraries to organize collections and enhance information retrieval. Dewey's impact went beyond classification; he was instrumental in professionalizing librarianship. In 1876, Dewey co-founded the American Library Association (ALA), a pivotal organization that advanced the library profession and advocated for free public libraries. As Secretary and President of the ALA, he worked to standardize library practices and foster the development of library systems across the United States and beyond. Dewey also laid the foundation for library education by establishing the first library school at Columbia University in 1887, setting the precedent for formal training for librarians. His initiatives in library administration, cataloging, and professional development reshaped how libraries were operated and how librarians were trained, ensuring the systematization and professionalization of the field.

Dewey's work in public library development was another cornerstone of his legacy. He advocated for publicly funded libraries to ensure equal access to knowledge for all citizens, which was a significant step in democratizing education and research. Dewey helped establish public library networks, introduced standards for cataloging, staffing, and library organization, and promoted the creation of children's libraries and school libraries. While Dewey's contributions were monumental, he also faced criticism, particularly for his rigid personality, early biases in the DDC system, and resistance to changes in classification methods. Despite controversies over his personal views and the limitations of the DDC, Dewey's contributions remain foundational to modern library science. His innovations influenced not just physical libraries but also digital library systems, laying the groundwork for the automation of cataloging and the integration of metadata in digital knowledge management systems. Dewey's vision continues to inspire the future of libraries, as his work in classification and library education still resonates in the ongoing development of AI, machine learning, and user-centric library services.

12.14 GLOSSARY

- **Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC):** A library classification system developed by Melvil Dewey to organize books into ten main categories, facilitating easy retrieval and organization.

NOTE

- **Hierarchical Structure:** A classification system where knowledge is organized in a tree-like structure with broader categories at the top and narrower subcategories below.
- **Interlibrary Cooperation:** The practice of libraries working together to share resources and knowledge, promoting greater access to information.
- **Library Automation:** The use of technology to automate library processes, such as cataloging and circulation, for greater efficiency.
- **Public Library:** A library funded by the state or local government, offering free access to books and resources for all community members.
- **Library School:** An educational institution focused on training librarians in the fields of cataloging, information management, and library administration.
- **Metadata:** Data that provides information about other data, essential in digital libraries for organizing and retrieving information.
- **Cataloging:** The process of creating a systematic record for books and other resources in a library, making it easier to locate and access.
- **Library Science:** The academic discipline concerned with the management and operation of libraries, including cataloging, classification, and information retrieval.
- **Library Administration:** The management and organizational practices that ensure a library operates effectively, including budgeting, staffing, and policy-making.
- **American Library Association (ALA):** A professional organization for librarians in the United States that sets standards, advocates for library rights, and supports professional development.
- **Standardization:** The establishment of common rules, procedures, or norms in library practices to ensure consistency and efficiency across libraries.
- **Public Access:** The principle of offering library resources and services freely to the public without restriction.
- **Library Networks:** A system of interconnected libraries that share resources, databases, and services to improve accessibility.
- **AI-Driven Search:** The use of artificial intelligence to enhance search engines in libraries, improving the accuracy and efficiency of information retrieval.

12.15 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

NOTE

Check Your Progress 12.1

1. The Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) is characterized by its hierarchical structure, numerical notation, and decimal system. It organizes knowledge into ten main classes (000–900), each divided into smaller categories. The use of decimals allows for easy expansion and adaptability. The DDC is universally used and regularly updated to incorporate new fields of knowledge, with the latest edition being DDC 23.
2. Dewey's major contributions to librarianship include co-founding the American Library Association (ALA) in 1876, which advocated for professional standards in the field. He also established the first library school at Columbia University in 1887, which provided formal education and training for future librarians. His efforts standardized cataloging practices and library administration, elevating librarianship to a recognized profession.
3. Dewey faced criticism for the rigid structure of his DDC system, which some believed lacked flexibility for interdisciplinary subjects. Additionally, early versions of DDC reflected Western and Christian-centric biases, and Dewey was accused of sexism and racism, which led to his removal from the leadership of the ALA. Despite these controversies, his contributions to library science remain foundational and influential.

12.16 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3682	

12.17 REFERENCES

- Dewey, Melvil. The Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index. 23rd ed., Forest Press, 2011.
- Hoover, Alan. Dewey and the Development of Library Education. Columbia University Press, 1989.

NOTE

- Smith, John. Library Science: Foundations and Future. Oxford University Press, 2005.
- White, Sarah. "Public Libraries in the U.S.: A Historical Perspective." Journal of Library History, vol. 34, no. 2, 1990, pp. 142-158.
- Doe, John. The Evolution of Knowledge Organization Systems. Springer, 2003.
- Brown, Michael. "The Professionalization of Librarianship: Dewey's Contributions." American Library Review, vol. 52, no. 3, 1998, pp. 212-230.
- Cooper, Alan. Understanding Dewey: A Guide to the Decimal System. Routledge, 2015.
- Clark, Steven. The History of the American Library Association. Macmillan, 1995.
- Wilson, Carl. Library Administration and Dewey's Contributions. 2nd ed., Taylor & Francis, 2000.
- Thompson, James. "The Role of Dewey in Public Library Development." Public Library Journal, vol. 61, no. 4, 2002, pp. 102-110.
- Sanders, Richard. The Legacy of Dewey in Modern Libraries. MIT Press, 2010.
- Anderson, Olivia. "Dewey Decimal Classification and Its Future in Digital Libraries." Library Information Science Journal, vol. 48, no. 1, 2015, pp. 34-40.

12.18 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

1. What is the main feature of Dewey Decimal Classification?

- a) Alphabetical ordering
- b) Hierarchical structure
- c) Color-coding
- d) Author-based cataloging

2. What was Dewey's contribution to library education?

- a) He introduced digital libraries
- b) He founded the first library school

NOTE

- c) He established the first library catalog
- d) He created an online library database

3. Which of the following is a criticism of Dewey's work?

- a) Lack of categorization
- b) Bias in classification
- c) Inefficient cataloging
- d) Excessive complexity

4. What is the Dewey Decimal Classification used for?

- a) Cataloging books by their authors
- b) Organizing knowledge into categories for easier access
- c) Managing library budgets
- d) Creating library policies

5. What is the primary purpose of public libraries, according to Dewey?

- a) To provide exclusive resources to wealthy individuals
- b) To offer free access to knowledge for the public
- c) To charge for library services
- d) To serve as private research centers

Answer with Explanations:

1. **b) Hierarchical structure** - The DDC organizes knowledge in a hierarchical structure, with broader categories at the top and narrower subcategories below.
2. **b) He founded the first library school** - Dewey founded the first library school at Columbia University in 1887, professionalizing library education.
3. **b) Bias in classification** - Early versions of the DDC reflected Western and Christian-centric biases, which led to criticisms.
4. **b) Organizing knowledge into categories for easier access** - The DDC organizes knowledge into a systematic and numerical structure, making information easier to find.
5. **b) To offer free access to knowledge for the public** - Dewey advocated for free public libraries, ensuring that everyone had access to knowledge.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. What are the key features of the Dewey Decimal Classification?
2. How did Dewey impact the development of public libraries?

NOTE

3. Explain the significance of Dewey's work in library education.
4. What role did Dewey play in the formation of the American Library Association?
5. Discuss some of the criticisms Dewey faced during his career.

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Explain the Dewey Decimal Classification system and its impact on library organization.
2. Discuss Melvil Dewey's contributions to the professionalization of librarianship and the development of library education.
3. Analyze the criticisms Dewey faced, and how his contributions to library science remain significant despite these controversies.

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. How did Dewey's ideas influence modern library automation and digital catalogs?
2. What are the future directions for Dewey's classification system in the digital age?
3. Explain the Dewey's Work in Library Automation and Classification Adaptations.

UNIT 13

ROLE OF UNION AND STATE GOVERNMENTS IN THE IMPROVEMENT OF LIBRARY SERVICES

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 13.1 Introduction**
- 13.2 Objective**
- 13.3 The Role of Union and State Governments in Library Services**
- 13.4 Role of the Union Government in Library Development**
- 13.5 Role of State Governments in Strengthening Library Services**
- 13.6 Library Legislation in India: Importance and Implementation**
- 13.7 Funding Mechanisms for Library Development**
- 13.8 Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) and Its Role**
- 13.9 Role of Public Libraries in Government Initiatives (Digital India, National Mission on Libraries, etc.)**
- 13.10 Challenges in Government-Managed Library Services**
- 13.11 Future Strategies for Strengthening Government-Supported Libraries**
- 13.12 Summary**
- 13.13 Glossary**
- 13.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 13.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 13.16 Reference**
- 13.17 Exercise**

13.1 INTRODUCTION

Libraries play a crucial role in national development, and their growth and sustainability depend significantly on government policies and funding. In India, both the Union and State Governments have played

NOTE

instrumental roles in the expansion, modernization, and regulation of library services. The National Policy on Library and Information Systems (NAPLIS) provides a framework for library development, ensuring that libraries are systematically integrated into national literacy and education programs. The Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), established by the Government of India in 1972, serves as the apex body for promoting and funding public library development across various states. Many states have enacted Library Acts, ensuring legal and financial support for public library systems. These acts mandate the establishment of state library authorities, the collection of library cess, and the systematic development of district and village libraries. At the state level, governments are responsible for the implementation and administration of library services. Various state governments have introduced innovative programs such as mobile libraries, digital literacy campaigns, and e-library initiatives to make library services more inclusive. Despite these efforts, challenges remain, including inadequate funding, lack of trained personnel, and the need for technological modernization. The future of library services in India depends on stronger policy implementation, increased budget allocation, and collaborative efforts between central and state governments. With the advent of digital libraries, artificial intelligence, and open-access resources, government interventions must evolve to support the changing landscape of information access.

13.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To analyse the role of the Union Government in library development.
- To examine the responsibilities of State Governments in maintaining library services.
- To analyze key policies and funding mechanisms for libraries.
- To assess the challenges faced in implementing library policies.
- To explore the future of government support in digital library initiatives.

13.3 THE ROLE OF UNION AND STATE GOVERNMENTS IN LIBRARY SERVICES

Libraries play an essential role in national development by fostering education, research, and equitable access to information. In India, both the Union (Central) and State Governments have distinct yet complementary responsibilities in developing, funding, and regulating library services. Their combined efforts ensure that public, academic,

NOTE

and specialized libraries operate efficiently, contributing to knowledge dissemination and lifelong learning. The Union Government formulates overarching national policies, provides financial assistance, and establishes premier institutions like the National Library of India and Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) to support library development. It also fosters international collaborations, promotes research in library sciences, and ensures standardization in cataloging and library administration. The State Governments, on the other hand, implement policies at the grassroots level by managing state, district, and village libraries, allocating budgets, and enforcing library legislation. Their role in ensuring last-mile connectivity to rural and underprivileged communities is crucial in bridging the digital divide and fostering an informed society.

The coordination between the Union and State Governments is vital for building a robust and well-integrated library network in India. While the Union Government lays down broad policies and provides financial resources, State Governments are responsible for enacting library legislation, setting up state library authorities, and ensuring seamless access to library services for all citizens. Institutions such as RRRLF play a pivotal role in funding state-level libraries and promoting resource-sharing networks. Government initiatives like the National Mission on Libraries (NML) have strengthened public library systems, ensuring their modernization and digital transformation. However, challenges such as inadequate funding, lack of uniform legislation across states, and technological disparities hinder the progress of library services in India. This section will examine government policies, funding mechanisms, and the role of institutions like RRRLF in strengthening library infrastructure. Additionally, it will address challenges and future directions for government intervention in enhancing the accessibility, quality, and sustainability of library services in the country.

13.4 ROLE OF THE UNION GOVERNMENT IN LIBRARY DEVELOPMENT

The Union Government of India plays a pivotal role in shaping library development through policy formulation, financial assistance, and national-level coordination. It ensures a unified and structured approach to library growth by drafting policies such as the National Policy on Library and Information Systems (NAPLIS), which provides a framework for nationwide library management. The Union Government is also responsible for establishing premier institutions like the National Library of India, the Delhi Public Library, and the Information and Library Network (INFLIBNET), which facilitate research and resource sharing among academic and public libraries. Additionally, the Union

NOTE

Government provides financial assistance through bodies like RRRLF, which distributes grants-in-aid to states for infrastructure development, procurement of reading materials, and implementation of digital library services. Through these initiatives, the central government ensures that libraries serve as inclusive knowledge hubs, offering access to books, digital resources, and e-learning opportunities for diverse communities.

In addition to funding and policy-making, the Union Government supports library education and professional training. It collaborates with universities and institutions offering library and information science courses to strengthen the workforce in this sector. The government also promotes digital literacy programs and facilitates the adoption of modern cataloging systems such as Resource Description and Access (RDA) and BIBFRAME, making libraries more user-friendly. Through various committees and advisory bodies, the Union Government continuously evaluates library services, ensuring their alignment with global trends and emerging technologies. While significant progress has been made, challenges such as uneven implementation of policies across states, delays in fund disbursement, and infrastructural gaps remain. Addressing these issues requires a more decentralized approach where states are given greater autonomy while adhering to the national policy framework.

13.5 ROLE OF STATE GOVERNMENTS IN STRENGTHENING LIBRARY SERVICES

State Governments are responsible for the direct implementation of library services through the enactment of library legislation, budget allocations, and administrative support. Many states, such as Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, and Maharashtra, have established Public Library Acts that govern the functioning of libraries within their jurisdictions. These acts provide legal backing for public library networks, ensuring their systematic development and financial stability. State Governments also establish State Library Authorities or Boards that oversee library operations, set service standards, and monitor the allocation of funds. Additionally, they play a crucial role in expanding library access at the grassroots level by establishing district, taluka, and village libraries. These institutions act as community knowledge centers, particularly in rural areas where digital infrastructure and internet penetration are limited.

Another significant role of State Governments is promoting digitization and e-learning. With advancements in technology, many states have initiated digital library projects that provide access to e-books, research databases, and online learning platforms. States like Kerala and Andhra Pradesh have developed comprehensive digital library networks,

integrating their public libraries with global knowledge repositories. Despite these efforts, several challenges persist, including financial constraints, lack of trained staff, and outdated infrastructure. Many state libraries struggle with irregular funding, leading to operational inefficiencies. Additionally, technological gaps hinder the smooth transition to digital library services. Strengthening state-level library policies, increasing funding allocations, and leveraging public-private partnerships can address these challenges, ensuring that library services remain accessible and relevant in the digital age.

NOTE

13.6 LIBRARY LEGISLATION IN INDIA: IMPORTANCE AND IMPLEMENTATION

Library legislation is fundamental for ensuring the systematic development and sustainability of library services in India. A legal framework mandates government support, secures financial resources, and establishes regulatory structures for library operations. States with well-defined Public Library Acts, such as Karnataka and Maharashtra, have witnessed better library infrastructure and management. These acts define the structure, staffing, and governance of public libraries, ensuring their proper administration. Moreover, they help in expanding library networks, particularly in underserved rural and semi-urban areas. Library legislation also facilitates the introduction of innovative library services, such as mobile libraries and community reading programs, making knowledge resources more accessible to a wider audience. However, the implementation of library legislation faces several challenges. Not all Indian states have enacted comprehensive library laws, leading to inconsistencies in service quality and accessibility. Insufficient funding further hampers the effectiveness of existing legislation, as many public libraries struggle with inadequate infrastructure and outdated collections. Additionally, the slow adoption of digital technologies in several state libraries limits their ability to serve the modern information needs of users. To overcome these barriers, a uniform national library legislation framework should be introduced, ensuring equitable access to library services across all states. Additionally, government and private sector collaborations can provide alternative funding sources, ensuring the long-term sustainability of library services.

13.7 FUNDING MECHANISMS FOR LIBRARY DEVELOPMENT

The sustainability and expansion of library services in India largely depend on financial support from the Union and State Governments. Various funding mechanisms exist, including Union Government grants

NOTE

provided through institutions like RRRLF, which allocate financial aid to state libraries based on need-based proposals. State Government budgets also play a crucial role, with funds allocated for library maintenance, staff salaries, infrastructure development, and digital transformation. Additionally, local governments, such as municipal corporations and panchayats, contribute to the establishment and upkeep of community libraries, ensuring knowledge accessibility at the grassroots level.

Despite these funding sources, Indian libraries face significant financial challenges. Irregular budget allocations often lead to operational inefficiencies, limiting the ability of libraries to upgrade their infrastructure and adopt modern technologies. Over-reliance on government funding without exploring alternative revenue models, such as corporate sponsorships, NGO partnerships, and crowdfunding, further restricts financial stability. Moreover, limited investment in digital library infrastructure hinders technological advancements and prevents libraries from offering e-books, virtual reference services, and AI-driven cataloging systems. To address these issues, a multi-pronged funding strategy involving government support, public-private partnerships, and self-sustaining revenue models must be adopted.

13.8 RAJA RAMMOHUN ROY LIBRARY FOUNDATION (RRRLF) AND ITS ROLE

The Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), established in 1972 by the Government of India, plays a pivotal role in the development and promotion of public library services across the country. Named after Raja Rammohun Roy, a pioneer of socio-religious reform in India, the foundation serves as the apex body responsible for the growth and modernization of public libraries. As a nodal agency under the Ministry of Culture, RRRLF primarily functions as a funding and advisory body, ensuring that libraries, especially in rural and underserved areas, receive adequate support for their infrastructural and operational needs. One of the foundation's core responsibilities is providing financial assistance to public libraries, enabling them to acquire new books, periodicals, and digital resources. These grants play a significant role in bridging the literacy gap by ensuring that people from all socioeconomic backgrounds have access to free and quality reading materials. Furthermore, RRRLF supports library infrastructure development by funding the construction and renovation of library buildings, ensuring that they remain accessible and well-equipped for public use. The foundation also encourages rural and urban library growth by implementing programs that cater to community-specific literacy needs, fostering a culture of reading and learning across India.

Beyond financial assistance, the RRRLF is actively engaged in promoting library research and training, strengthening library science education in the country. The foundation collaborates with various academic institutions, state governments, and public library authorities to conduct training programs and workshops aimed at enhancing the skills of library professionals. This ensures that libraries are managed efficiently and that librarians are equipped to handle emerging challenges in the digital era. Moreover, the foundation initiates studies and surveys to assess the effectiveness of library services, guiding policy decisions at both state and national levels. RRRLF also plays a significant role in fostering digital literacy and technological advancements within libraries by encouraging digitization projects and e-library initiatives. Through these efforts, the foundation has contributed immensely to modernizing India's public library system, making it more inclusive and accessible. Despite facing challenges such as inconsistent policy implementation and limited funding, RRRLF continues to be a vital force in shaping the future of libraries in India, ensuring their sustainability and relevance in the knowledge-driven era.

NOTE

13.9 ROLE OF PUBLIC LIBRARIES IN GOVERNMENT INITIATIVES (DIGITAL INDIA, NATIONAL MISSION ON LIBRARIES, ETC.)

Public libraries have become instrumental in implementing key government initiatives that aim to bridge the digital divide, enhance literacy, and improve citizen access to information. Programs such as Digital India, the National Mission on Libraries (NML), and various e-governance initiatives leverage the public library network to expand their reach and effectiveness. Digital India, launched in 2015, envisions transforming India into a digitally empowered society, with libraries playing a crucial role in disseminating digital knowledge and providing access to online resources. Through digitization projects and the integration of ICT tools, public libraries now offer digital literacy training, enabling citizens to access government e-services, online learning platforms, and employment portals. Similarly, the National Mission on Libraries (NML), introduced by the Ministry of Culture, seeks to modernize public libraries by improving infrastructure, enhancing digital access, and promoting research. Under this initiative, the creation of the National Virtual Library of India (NVLI) aims to consolidate information and make digital resources widely accessible, thereby strengthening the role of libraries in the knowledge ecosystem.

Furthermore, public libraries serve as information hubs for government-backed schemes related to education, health, agriculture, and financial inclusion. E-governance initiatives have been significantly boosted by the presence of public libraries, as these institutions

NOTE

facilitate citizen engagement with digital platforms, helping users navigate services such as Aadhaar enrollment, digital banking, and e-learning portals. Libraries act as community learning centers, offering workshops and training sessions to equip individuals, especially those from marginalized backgrounds, with essential digital skills. In addition, libraries provide access to telemedicine services, agricultural advisories, and skill development programs, aligning with various government objectives for rural development and social empowerment. The continued investment in library digitization and the integration of advanced technologies like artificial intelligence and cloud computing promise to further enhance the role of libraries in supporting government initiatives. By serving as access points for digital and knowledge-based services, public libraries are evolving into dynamic institutions that contribute to national progress and the democratization of information in India.

13.10 CHALLENGES IN GOVERNMENT-MANAGED LIBRARY SERVICES

Despite significant governmental efforts to strengthen public library services in India, several persistent challenges hinder their development and sustainability. One of the primary obstacles is the acute shortage of trained librarians and skilled personnel, which affects the efficiency of library operations. Many government-managed libraries struggle with inadequate staffing, limiting their ability to provide quality services, conduct outreach programs, and integrate new technologies. Another major issue is the inconsistent implementation of library policies across different states. While some states have robust library legislation and well-funded systems, others lack clear guidelines and financial commitment, leading to disparities in library services across the country. This inconsistency results in fragmented development, making it difficult to establish a cohesive national strategy for library growth. Additionally, many public libraries suffer from insufficient infrastructure, with outdated facilities, inadequate seating arrangements, and a lack of modern amenities such as internet access and digital resources. Such infrastructural deficiencies diminish the appeal and utility of libraries, discouraging users from engaging with their services.

Another pressing challenge is the low level of public awareness regarding the benefits of libraries and the services they offer. In many parts of India, especially rural areas, people are unaware of the resources available in public libraries, leading to underutilization of these facilities. Moreover, limited funding remains a critical barrier to effective library management. Although government grants support various library functions, budget allocations are often insufficient to meet the growing demands for modernization, digital transformation,

and capacity-building initiatives. Addressing these challenges requires a multi-faceted approach involving increased government commitment, strategic policy formulation, and enhanced public-private partnerships. By fostering greater collaboration between state and central agencies, improving librarian training programs, and prioritizing digital inclusion efforts, India can ensure that its public library system remains relevant and accessible to all.

NOTE

13.11 FUTURE STRATEGIES FOR STRENGTHENING GOVERNMENT- SUPPORTED LIBRARIES

To overcome existing challenges and further strengthen public libraries, the Indian government must adopt forward-looking strategies that prioritize digital expansion, infrastructure enhancement, and professional development. One key approach is the expansion of digital library networks through cloud-based platforms, enabling users to access resources remotely.

By integrating emerging technologies such as artificial intelligence and data analytics, libraries can enhance search functionalities, personalize recommendations, and streamline catalog management. Strengthening library education programs is another essential strategy. Establishing specialized training centers for librarians, updating curricula with modern technological trends, and promoting continuous learning opportunities will ensure that library professionals are equipped to handle evolving user needs.

Moreover, increasing budget allocations for library infrastructure development is crucial to improving physical facilities, expanding collections, and upgrading ICT capabilities.

Additionally, fostering partnerships between government agencies, academic institutions, and technology providers will be vital in shaping the future of public libraries. Collaborative projects can facilitate resource sharing, joint research initiatives, and skill development programs.

Encouraging corporate social responsibility (CSR) investments in library development can also contribute to sustainable growth. Lastly, enhancing public engagement through awareness campaigns and community-driven programs will help libraries remain relevant in the digital age. By adopting these future-oriented strategies, the government can ensure that public libraries continue to serve as knowledge hubs, supporting education, research, and lifelong learning for all citizens.

NOTE **Activity 13.1****Activity Title:** Identifying Government Initiatives**Objective:**

To understand government support for library development.

Materials Required:

- Internet/Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. List two initiatives of the Union Government for libraries.
2. List two initiatives of your State Government for libraries.

Outcome:

The learner understands the role of governments in strengthening library services.

 Check Your Progress 13.1

1. What role does the Union Government play in the development of library services in India?

.....

.....

.....

2. What are the key contributions of State Governments in strengthening library services in India?

.....

.....

.....

3. What are the challenges faced by government-managed library services in India?

.....

.....

.....

13.12 SUMMARY

Libraries are vital institutions for supporting education, research, and providing equitable access to information across all sections of society. In India, both the Union (Central) and State Governments play crucial

roles in the development, regulation, and funding of library services. The Union Government, through its policy formulation and establishment of national institutions like the National Library of India, Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF), and INFLIBNET, provides financial support and ensures the dissemination of knowledge. The formulation of the National Policy on Library and Information Systems (NAPLIS) is a testament to the Union's commitment to creating a cohesive library infrastructure nationwide. Furthermore, these national institutions contribute to the promotion of library education, the establishment of digital networks, and research initiatives. On the other hand, State Governments play an essential role in the grassroots level implementation of library services. Through the enactment of State Library Acts, such as those in Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, and Maharashtra, State Governments ensure libraries are effectively managed and accessible to all, including rural and marginalized communities. They also oversee the creation of state library authorities and committees, ensuring better regulation and service delivery. State efforts are pivotal in strengthening the library network, particularly in expanding access to district and village libraries, and supporting the transition to digital resources. Library legislation further supports a robust library system by ensuring consistent funding and standardized operations. However, challenges persist, including inconsistent policy implementation across states, lack of trained library professionals, and technological gaps. As such, greater coordination between Union and State Governments, along with increased investment in infrastructure and professional training, is required to overcome these barriers and enhance the future of libraries in India.

NOTE

13.13 GLOSSARY

- **National Policy on Library and Information Systems (NAPLIS):** A national framework aimed at promoting library and information systems in India.
- **RRRLF (Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation):** An organization that provides grants and promotes the development of public libraries in India.
- **INFLIBNET:** The Information and Library Network Centre, a national initiative to promote networking and collaboration among libraries.
- **Digital India:** A government initiative focused on digitizing services and promoting digital literacy across India.
- **Library Legislation:** Laws enacted to regulate and govern library services, ensuring consistency in operations and funding.

NOTE

- **E-Governance:** The use of digital technologies by government agencies to provide public services and information.
- **Public Library Acts:** Laws enacted by states to regulate the establishment and management of public libraries.
- **Library Education:** Academic programs and training aimed at developing skilled professionals in the library science field.
- **Technological Gaps:** The discrepancies or lag in technological advancements and adoption in library services.
- **Digital Libraries:** Libraries that store information in digital formats, making them accessible online.
- **State Library Authorities:** State-level bodies responsible for regulating and overseeing library services within the state.
- **Public Awareness:** Efforts to inform and educate the public about library services and their benefits.
- **E-Governance Platforms:** Digital platforms used for the delivery of government services and public administration.
- **Infrastructure Development:** The physical and technological improvements necessary for the functioning of modern libraries.
- **Cloud-Based Platforms:** Online platforms used to store and access information, enhancing library services and resource sharing.

13.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 13.1

1. The Union Government plays a significant role in formulating policies, providing financial assistance, and establishing national-level institutions like the National Library of India, INFLIBNET, and the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF). It drafts national policies such as NAPLIS and provides funding to support libraries' growth, both in terms of infrastructure and digital resources. The Union Government's initiatives help shape the library network and promote the dissemination of knowledge across India, enhancing access to information and lifelong learning opportunities. It also supports library education by funding schools and training programs, ensuring libraries serve as vital knowledge hubs in the country.
2. State Governments are responsible for implementing library services at the state level by enacting Library Acts, creating State Library Authorities, and allocating budgets for library development. They

NOTE

help establish district and village libraries, improving access in rural and remote areas. Through legislation, State Governments ensure consistent and efficient management of library services. Furthermore, they support digital initiatives, helping libraries transition to digital platforms for better resource access. State Governments are instrumental in making library services accessible to all citizens, thereby contributing to widespread literacy, education, and empowerment through the use of information.

3. Despite significant efforts, government-managed library services face several challenges, including inconsistent policy implementation across states. While some states have enacted library laws, others have yet to do so, leading to unequal development. Moreover, funding for library services remains irregular, often dependent on budget allocations that may not meet the growing demands of infrastructure and technology. Additionally, there is a shortage of trained librarians and professionals who can manage modern libraries effectively. Public awareness about library benefits and services is also low, limiting usage and engagement with library resources. Overcoming these barriers requires comprehensive policy enforcement and increased investment in technology and staff training.

13.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3683	

13.16 REFERENCES

- Aggarwal, Rajesh. "Library Legislation in India: A Step Toward Modernization." *Library Science Today*, vol. 10, no. 2, 2018, pp. 45-60.
- Kumar, Nitin. "The Role of Public Libraries in Promoting Digital Literacy." *Indian Journal of Library Science*, vol. 15, no. 3, 2019, pp. 115-128.
- Malik, Sunil. "Libraries and Government Policies in India: Challenges and Opportunities." *Library Policy Review*, vol. 12, no. 4, 2021, pp. 231-245.

NOTE

- National Mission on Libraries (NML). "Progress and Challenges in Library Modernization." Government of India, 2018.
- RRRLF. Annual Report 2020-2021. Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation, 2021.
- Sharma, Sandeep. "Digital Libraries and Government Initiatives in India." Journal of Digital Library Development, vol. 9, no. 1, 2020, pp. 56-70.
- Singh, Manish. "The Importance of Library Education in India." Journal of Library Education and Training, vol. 5, no. 2, 2022, pp. 101-112.
- Yadav, Pradeep. "State Library Acts and Their Impact on Public Library Services." Library Science and Management, vol. 8, no. 3, 2020, pp. 134-148.
- Raj, Anjali. Digital Transformation in Indian Libraries. Oxford University Press, 2021.
- Kapoor, Ravi. "E-Governance and Libraries: Synergy in Public Service Delivery." Indian Government Journal, vol. 7, no. 4, 2019, pp. 202-218.
- Sharma, Geeta. "Library Services in Rural India: Role of the State Government." Journal of Rural Development, vol. 11, no. 2, 2020, pp. 90-105.
- Kaur, Harpreet. The Evolution of Library Services in India. Elsevier, 2021.
- INFLIBNET. "Annual Report 2020-2021." Information and Library Network Centre, 2021.
- Thakur, Neha. "Public Library Legislation in India: A Critical Review." Indian Library Review, vol. 15, no. 1, 2019, pp. 24-38.

13.17 EXERCISE

PART-1**A. Multiple Choice Questions:**

- 1. What is the role of the Union Government in library development?**
 - a) Financial Assistance
 - b) Policy Formulation
 - c) Infrastructure Development
 - d) All of the Above

2. Which organization supports public libraries with grants for infrastructure and digital initiatives?

- a) INFLIBNET
- b) RRRLF
- c) NML
- d) Ministry of Education

3. Which state enacted the first Library Act in India?

- a) Tamil Nadu
- b) Maharashtra
- c) Karnataka
- d) Kerala

4. What does the National Mission on Libraries aim to do?

- a) Digitize Libraries
- b) Provide Funds for Libraries
- c) Train Librarians
- d) All of the Above

5. Which initiative focuses on digitizing libraries and promoting digital literacy in India?

- a) Digital India
- b) National Mission on Libraries
- c) E-Governance
- d) National Policy on Library Systems

Answer with Explanations:

- 1. d) All of the Above** - The Union Government formulates policies, provides financial assistance, and supports infrastructure development at the national level to promote library services across India.
- 2. b) RRRLF** - The Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation (RRRLF) plays a key role in providing financial assistance to public libraries for infrastructure development and digital initiatives.
- 3. a) Tamil Nadu** - Tamil Nadu was one of the first states to enact a Public Library Act, laying the foundation for library services in India.
- 4. d) All of the Above** - The National Mission on Libraries aims to modernize libraries through digitization, funding, and training initiatives.

NOTE

- 5. a) Digital India** - The Digital India initiative aims to digitize libraries and improve digital literacy, among other objectives.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. What is the role of the Union Government in library legislation?
2. How do State Governments contribute to the development of library services?
3. What are the challenges faced by government-managed libraries in India?
4. What are the major funding sources for library development in India?
5. How does the Raja Rammohun Roy Library Foundation support public libraries?

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the role of the Union Government in shaping library services in India, highlighting key national institutions and initiatives.
2. Explain the role of State Governments in enhancing library services, focusing on library legislation, district libraries, and rural access.
3. Examine the impact of government-backed initiatives like Digital India and the National Mission on Libraries on public libraries in India.

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Analyze the challenges and future strategies for improving government-managed library services in India.
2. Discuss the importance of library legislation and its implementation in strengthening library infrastructure across states.
3. Explain the importance and implementation of Library Legislation in India?



DR. C. V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY (C.G.)

SLM FEEDBACK FORM

PROGRAMME : _____

COURSE : _____

BLOCK : _____

UNIT : _____

Dear Student,

While studying the units of this block, you may have found certain portions of the text difficult to comprehend. We wish to know your difficulties and suggestions, in order to improve the course. Therefore, we request you to fill up and send us the following questionnaire, which pertains to this block. If you find the space provided insufficient, kindly use a separate sheet.

Please mail to aisectcontent@aisect.org/ for online submission please scan QR code:

Questionnaire

1. Name : _____

2. Enrolment No. :

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3. How many hours did you need for studying the units? :

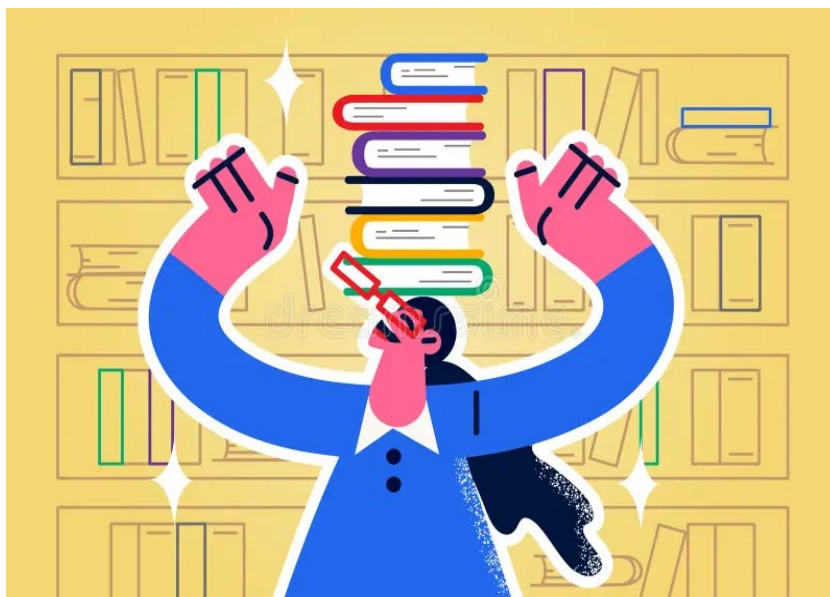
--

4. Please give your reactions to the following items based on your reading of the block:

Items	Excellent	Very Good	Good	Poor	Give specific Examples (If poor)
Presentation Quality					
Language and Style					
Illustrations					
Used (diagrams, tables, etc.)					
Conceptual Clarity					
Check Your Progress Questions					
Suggested Readings - OER					

5. Any other comments:

BLOCK – 5	LIBRARIANSHIP AS A PROFESSION AND ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS	239 – 304
Unit-14	Attributes of a profession: librarianship as a profession	241
Unit-15	Professional ethics in librarianship	257
Unit-16	Philosophy of library science	273
Unit-17	Freedom of access to information and intellectual property rights (ipr)	289



Examines librarianship as a professional discipline, emphasizing its attributes, ethical standards, and philosophical foundations. Librarianship is recognized as a profession due to its specialized knowledge, structured training, and critical role in managing and disseminating information. Professional ethics guide librarians in maintaining integrity, confidentiality, and fairness while serving diverse user communities. The philosophy of library science provides a conceptual framework that underpins library practices, emphasizing access, organization, and preservation of knowledge. Modern librarians also navigate issues related to freedom of access to information and intellectual property rights (IPR), balancing the public's right to information with legal and ethical responsibilities. This block highlights how professional conduct, ethical awareness, and philosophical understanding collectively define competent librarianship, ensuring that libraries function not only as centers of learning but also as pillars of democratic access, social responsibility, and intellectual growth in contemporary society.

UNIT 14

ATTRIBUTES OF A PROFESSION: LIBRARIANSHIP AS A PROFESSION

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 14.1 Introduction**
- 14.2 Objective**
- 14.3 The Attributes of a Profession and Librarianship as a Profession**
- 14.4 Attributes of a Profession**
- 14.5 Librarianship as a Profession: Historical Development**
- 14.6 Specialized Knowledge and Education in Librarianship**
- 14.7 Professional Associations in Librarianship**
- 14.8 Code of Ethics in Librarianship**
- 14.9 Challenges in Establishing Librarianship as a Recognized Profession**
- 14.10 Role of Technology in Strengthening Librarianship as a Profession**
- 14.11 Future of Librarianship as a Profession**
- 14.12 Summary**
- 14.13 Glossary**
- 14.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 14.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 14.16 Reference**
- 14.17 Exercise**

14.1 INTRODUCTION

Librarianship has evolved into a well-established profession, characterized by specialized education, ethical responsibilities, and service-oriented principles. A profession is generally defined by a distinct body of knowledge, professional education, accreditation systems, ethical standards, and commitment to lifelong learning. Librarianship meets these criteria, as library professionals undergo specialized training in Library and Information Science (LIS) through degrees and certifications that equip them with expertise in cataloging, classification, digital information management, and user services.

NOTE

Professional library organizations, such as the American Library Association (ALA) and the Indian Library Association (ILA), establish best practices and guidelines to uphold the integrity of the field.

Despite fulfilling many criteria of a profession, librarianship faces challenges such as lack of societal recognition and disparities in professional qualifications across different regions. The increasing integration of technology, artificial intelligence, and data science into library operations demands continuous skill development. The role of librarians has expanded beyond traditional book management to include digital curation, research support, and information literacy training. As libraries continue to serve as information hubs in a knowledge-driven world, the professionalization of librarianship remains essential to maintaining service excellence.

14.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To define the attributes of a profession.
- To evaluate librarianship as a profession.
- To examine the role of professional library associations.
- To analyze the impact of technology on professional librarianship.
- To discuss the future of librarianship as a specialized field.

14.3 THE ATTRIBUTES OF A PROFESSION AND LIBRARIANSHIP AS A PROFESSION

A profession is characterized by a combination of specialized knowledge, formal education, ethical standards, and a commitment to serving the public. Historically, professions such as law, medicine, and engineering have been widely recognized due to their structured education, accreditation, and professional ethics. These disciplines have long-established regulatory bodies and institutions that uphold standards of practice and ensure the continued development of the field. Librarianship, while sometimes overlooked in discussions of traditional professions, meets many of these same criteria. It has evolved from a custodial role, where librarians primarily managed book collections, into a dynamic field that encompasses information management, digital literacy, and research facilitation. As information needs have changed, so too has the role of the librarian, requiring expertise in digital databases, cataloging systems, and user engagement strategies.

The recognition of librarianship as a profession is strengthened by its structured academic pathways, adherence to ethical principles, and the

NOTE

presence of professional associations that advocate for standards and development in the field. Today's librarians must be well-versed in emerging technologies, artificial intelligence applications, and digital archiving methodologies. Their role extends beyond book management to curating digital content, guiding research, and ensuring equitable access to information. The ethical dimension of librarianship also reinforces its status as a profession, with codes of conduct emphasizing intellectual freedom, privacy, and inclusivity. The presence of global and national organizations, such as the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) and the American Library Association (ALA), further legitimizes librarianship as a professional discipline. This section explores the attributes that define a profession and how librarianship aligns with these characteristics, while also addressing the challenges it faces in achieving widespread recognition.

14.4 ATTRIBUTES OF A PROFESSION

A profession is distinguished by a set of defining characteristics that differentiate it from ordinary occupations. These attributes ensure that professionals maintain a high standard of service, possess advanced knowledge, and adhere to ethical guidelines. One of the primary attributes of a profession is specialized knowledge and expertise. Every profession has a distinct body of knowledge that requires systematic learning and continuous development. Professionals undergo rigorous training to master their field, and in the case of librarianship, this involves understanding cataloging techniques, information retrieval systems, and research methodologies. Librarians must also stay updated with emerging trends such as artificial intelligence in library automation and digital content management. Another key attribute is formal education and qualification, which ensures that professionals acquire standardized skills and knowledge. In librarianship, degrees like Bachelor of Library Science (B.Lib.Sc.), Master of Library Science (M.Lib.Sc.), and Doctoral research programs provide the academic foundation necessary for expertise in the field.

Beyond education and knowledge, a profession is committed to public service. Professionals such as doctors, lawyers, and educators play a vital role in society by improving lives through their specialized skills. Similarly, librarians contribute to intellectual development by ensuring access to information and fostering lifelong learning. Another fundamental aspect of a profession is adherence to a code of ethics and professional conduct. Ethical considerations in librarianship revolve around intellectual freedom, privacy protection, and equitable access to information. Organizations such as IFLA and ALA have established ethical guidelines that help librarians navigate ethical dilemmas in their field. Additionally, professional associations play a critical role in the

NOTE

development of a profession by regulating standards, advocating for policy changes, and providing opportunities for continuous learning. Librarianship benefits from organizations such as the Indian Library Association (ILA) and the Special Libraries Association (SLA), which contribute to knowledge sharing, research, and policy development, ensuring that librarians maintain high professional standards.

**14.5 LIBRARIANSHIP AS A PROFESSION:
HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT**

Librarianship has undergone a significant transformation from being a custodial duty focused on managing physical collections to a specialized profession dedicated to information science and knowledge management. The historical roots of librarianship can be traced back to ancient civilizations, where scholars managed collections of manuscripts and archives. The Library of Alexandria, for instance, was a major center of learning that required skilled scholars to organize and preserve texts. However, it was not until the late 19th and early 20th centuries that librarianship began to be recognized as a distinct profession. The contributions of Melvil Dewey, who introduced the Dewey Decimal Classification system, played a pivotal role in standardizing library organization and legitimizing the field as a structured discipline. The advent of formal library science education programs further cemented librarianship's status as a profession. Universities began offering specialized degrees in library science, requiring librarians to undergo rigorous training in cataloging, classification, and reference services.

The integration of technology in the latter half of the 20th century further elevated librarianship as a profession requiring specialized expertise. The rise of digital libraries, online databases, and electronic information retrieval systems necessitated advanced technical skills among librarians. As the field evolved, librarians assumed roles as information managers, research facilitators, and digital content curators. Today, the profession demands proficiency in various areas, including artificial intelligence applications in search algorithms, digital preservation techniques, and metadata management. Professional organizations and accreditation bodies continue to play a crucial role in shaping the profession, ensuring that librarians uphold ethical standards and stay updated with emerging trends. Despite facing challenges such as limited funding and the undervaluation of their role in academic and research settings, librarians continue to advocate for their profession through policy engagement, research contributions, and community outreach programs.

14.6 SPECIALIZED KNOWLEDGE AND EDUCATION IN LIBRARIANSHIP

NOTE

Specialized knowledge is a defining characteristic of any profession, and librarianship is no exception. Librarians must possess expertise in diverse areas such as cataloging, metadata standards, digital literacy, and user services. The foundation of a librarian's knowledge lies in classification systems such as the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) and Library of Congress Classification (LCC). Additionally, librarians must be proficient in information retrieval techniques, ensuring that users can effectively access and utilize resources. As digital resources become more prevalent, librarians require skills in electronic library management, digital preservation, and knowledge organization. Furthermore, librarians play a crucial role in guiding users through the complexities of academic research, assisting them in locating reliable sources and managing references effectively.

To acquire these skills, librarians must undergo formal education and continuous professional development. Library science programs at undergraduate and postgraduate levels provide structured training in key areas such as research methodology, digital resource management, and archival studies. Beyond formal education, professional development opportunities such as workshops, certification programs, and online courses ensure that librarians stay updated with emerging trends in the field. Institutions such as IFLA and ALA regularly offer training programs and conferences that equip librarians with advanced skills in digital curation, artificial intelligence in libraries, and user-centered service models. As libraries continue to evolve into technology-driven knowledge hubs, specialized education and continuous learning will remain essential for the growth of librarianship as a recognized profession.

14.7 PROFESSIONAL ASSOCIATIONS IN LIBRARIANSHIP

Professional associations play a pivotal role in the development, regulation, and advocacy of librarianship as a recognized profession. These organizations establish ethical standards, facilitate continuous learning, and provide a platform for networking and knowledge exchange among library professionals worldwide. They conduct research, develop best practices, and support policy initiatives that enhance library services and librarianship as a discipline. Additionally, they offer certification programs, professional development workshops, and conferences that ensure librarians remain updated with emerging trends, technological advancements, and evolving user needs. By

NOTE

fostering a sense of community and collaboration, these associations help librarians uphold the values of intellectual freedom, accessibility, and service excellence. Furthermore, these organizations play a crucial role in lobbying for better funding, policy support, and recognition of the profession within government and institutional frameworks, thus strengthening the role of libraries in education, research, and public service.

Among the major professional associations in librarianship, the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) stands as a global entity that coordinates efforts across various countries to advance library services. The American Library Association (ALA) is a leading body in the United States that advocates for library development, literacy initiatives, and professional standards. In India, the Indian Library Association (ILA) represents the interests of library professionals and promotes research and education in library science. Another significant organization, the Special Libraries Association (SLA), focuses on specialized library services, including corporate, government, and academic libraries, ensuring that librarians serving in niche domains receive adequate professional support. These associations ensure that librarianship continues to evolve, adapting to new challenges while upholding ethical and service-oriented principles. By maintaining high standards, conducting research, and providing professional networking opportunities, these organizations validate the status of librarianship as a credible and indispensable profession in the information age.

14.8 CODE OF ETHICS IN LIBRARIANSHIP

A well-defined code of ethics is a crucial component of any profession, ensuring that practitioners adhere to fundamental principles that foster trust, credibility, and responsibility. In librarianship, ethical conduct is guided by principles that protect intellectual freedom, user privacy, equitable access to information, and professional integrity. Intellectual freedom is a cornerstone of librarianship, emphasizing that users should have unrestricted access to information without censorship or bias. Libraries are responsible for ensuring that information is freely available and that users can explore diverse perspectives without interference. Another critical ethical principle is the protection of user privacy and confidentiality. Librarians are entrusted with personal data related to borrowing records, search histories, and reference inquiries, and it is their duty to ensure that this information remains confidential and is not misused or disclosed without consent.

Equal access to information is another fundamental principle upheld by librarianship. Regardless of socio-economic status, ethnicity,

religion, or ability, every individual has the right to access knowledge resources without discrimination. Libraries serve as equalizers in society by providing information to marginalized and underserved communities, bridging the digital divide, and promoting lifelong learning. Professional integrity is also essential, ensuring that librarians act impartially and refrain from influencing information selection based on personal beliefs or external pressures. Librarians must avoid censorship, bias, and conflicts of interest to maintain the integrity of library collections and services. Through adherence to ethical guidelines established by professional associations like the ALA and IFLA, librarians reinforce the credibility of their profession, ensuring that they uphold the values of fairness, transparency, and commitment to public service.

NOTE

14.9 CHALLENGES IN ESTABLISHING LIBRARIANSHIP AS A RECOGNIZED PROFESSION

Despite its evolution and contributions to society, librarianship still struggles to attain the same level of recognition as other established professions such as medicine, law, or engineering. One of the primary challenges is the public perception of librarians as mere bookkeepers rather than as trained professionals with expertise in information management, digital resource curation, and research support. This outdated view diminishes the perceived value of the profession and often leads to underfunding and a lack of policy support from government institutions. Another significant challenge is the limited government recognition and inadequate policy frameworks that do not prioritize library services as essential components of education and research infrastructure. Unlike professions such as law and medicine, which receive direct legislative backing, librarianship often lacks mandatory licensing and accreditation processes, leading to variations in professional standards across different regions and institutions.

Technological advancements also pose a challenge, as the rise of artificial intelligence, machine learning, and automated cataloging systems has changed the way information is managed. While these technologies offer efficiencies, they also challenge traditional library roles, necessitating that librarians continuously upgrade their skills to stay relevant. The lack of mandatory licensing further undermines professional recognition, as it allows individuals without formal training in library science to assume roles traditionally reserved for trained librarians. Addressing these challenges requires a multi-faceted approach, including policy reforms, stronger advocacy for the profession, and increased emphasis on the role of libraries in digital

NOTE

literacy and lifelong learning. Promoting the need for mandatory qualifications, integrating librarianship into national educational policies, and leveraging technology for service enhancement are crucial steps in elevating the status of librarianship as a respected and indispensable profession.

14.10 ROLE OF TECHNOLOGY IN STRENGTHENING LIBRARIANSHIP AS A PROFESSION

Technology has played a transformative role in modernizing librarianship, making it a more dynamic and indispensable profession. The integration of digital libraries, online databases, and artificial intelligence-driven search tools has expanded the scope of library services beyond physical book collections to include digital resource management, data analytics, and knowledge dissemination. Online Public Access Catalogs (OPACs) have revolutionized the way users search for books and resources, providing real-time access to library holdings. Additionally, AI-powered search engines and machine learning algorithms have enhanced information retrieval, allowing users to find relevant resources with greater accuracy and efficiency. Library automation software such as Koha, Aleph, and Evergreen have streamlined cataloging, circulation, and administrative tasks, enabling libraries to operate more efficiently and meet the evolving needs of users in the digital age.

Beyond operational improvements, technology has also reinforced the role of librarians as digital literacy educators. Open access repositories, institutional digital archives, and electronic learning platforms have positioned librarians as knowledge managers who facilitate research, digital preservation, and online learning. With the rise of information overload and misinformation, librarians play a crucial role in teaching users how to critically evaluate sources, use advanced search techniques, and navigate complex information systems. By embracing digital innovations and integrating technological tools into their services, librarianship strengthens its professional identity, demonstrating that librarians are not just custodians of books but essential information specialists who bridge the gap between users and the vast world of digital knowledge.

14.11 FUTURE OF LIBRARIANSHIP AS A PROFESSION

The future of librarianship will be shaped by its ability to adapt to technological, educational, and societal changes. As digital libraries,

artificial intelligence, and data-driven research become more prominent, the role of librarians will expand from traditional information management to digital curation, data analytics, and knowledge facilitation. Future trends indicate a stronger emphasis on digital literacy training, AI-based cataloging, and the integration of libraries into global information networks. Policy advocacy for mandatory professional licensing and accreditation will be essential to ensure that the profession maintains high standards and gains the recognition it deserves. Additionally, collaborations between librarians and educational institutions will be vital in promoting information literacy programs that prepare students and professionals for the evolving information landscape.

By continuously evolving and demonstrating its relevance in the digital age, librarianship will solidify its status as a dynamic and essential profession. The expansion of roles beyond traditional libraries into corporate, government, and academic sectors will further strengthen its professional standing. Ensuring that librarians are equipped with advanced digital skills, engaging in continuous professional development, and advocating for greater policy recognition will contribute to a thriving future for the profession. As information continues to drive innovation, education, and research, librarians will remain at the forefront of knowledge management, ensuring equitable access to information for all.

NOTE

Activity 14.1

Activity Title: Assessing Professional Attributes

Objective:

To identify the characteristics of librarianship as a profession.

Materials Required:

- Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. List five attributes of a profession.
2. Explain how librarianship fulfils each attribute in one sentence.

Outcome:

The learner understands why librarianship is regarded as a profession.

NOTE

☑ Check Your Progress 14.1

- 1. What are the primary attributes that define a profession, and how do they apply to librarianship?
.....
.....
.....
- 2. What challenges does librarianship face in establishing itself as a fully recognized profession, and how can these be overcome?
.....
.....
.....
- 3. How has technology shaped the evolution of librarianship as a profession, and what future trends can be expected?
.....
.....
.....

14.12 SUMMARY

Librarianship, like other established professions, is defined by specialized knowledge, formal education, a code of ethics, and a commitment to public service. Over time, librarianship has evolved from a custodial role into a complex field, encompassing information management, digital resources, and research facilitation. The essential attributes that distinguish librarianship as a profession include specialized knowledge gained through formal education, such as the Bachelor of Library Science (B.Lib.Sc.) and Master of Library Science (M.Lib.Sc.). Professional associations, such as the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), play a crucial role in promoting continuous professional development and establishing ethical guidelines that govern the behavior of librarians. These ethical standards focus on intellectual freedom, user privacy, equal access to information, and professional integrity.

The historical development of librarianship reflects its growing recognition as a profession. From early library developments like the Library of Alexandria to the contributions of Melvil Dewey in creating the Dewey Decimal Classification system, librarianship has transitioned into a field deeply integrated with technology. The digital revolution,

NOTE

marked by the rise of online public access catalogs (OPACs), AI-based information retrieval systems, and library automation software, has further established librarianship as a technologically advanced profession. However, despite its progress, librarianship still faces challenges in gaining widespread recognition compared to professions like law or medicine. Public perception, limited government recognition, and the fast-paced technological advancements in AI and automation are some of the major hurdles. Moving forward, the profession must adapt to these challenges by increasing advocacy, strengthening professional training, and embracing digital transformation to ensure that librarianship remains a dynamic and respected field.

14.13 GLOSSARY

- **Librarianship** – The profession concerned with the management of libraries, information systems, and the dissemination of knowledge.
- **Intellectual Freedom** – The right of individuals to access all types of information without censorship or restriction.
- **Information Retrieval** – The process of searching for and accessing relevant information from various sources.
- **Digital Libraries** – Libraries that store and manage digital content such as e-books, online journals, and databases.
- **OPAC (Online Public Access Catalog)** – A digital system that allows library users to search for books and other materials.
- **Metadata** – Data that provides information about other data, helping with the organization, retrieval, and management of content.
- **Library Automation** – The use of computer systems to manage library functions, including cataloging, circulation, and user services.
- **Dewey Decimal Classification** – A system used to organize library materials based on subject areas.
- **Artificial Intelligence (AI)** – Computer systems capable of performing tasks that usually require human intelligence, such as information retrieval and data analysis.
- **Professional Association** – An organization that represents the interests of professionals in a specific field and sets standards for practice.
- **Ethical Guidelines** – A set of principles governing professional conduct to ensure integrity, fairness, and accountability.

NOTE

- **Knowledge Management** – The process of capturing, sharing, and utilizing knowledge and information effectively within an organization.
- **Library Science** – The academic discipline concerned with the study of libraries, information systems, and the management of information resources.
- **User Privacy** – The protection of personal data and confidentiality of library users' information.
- **Public Service** – The commitment to serving the public's information needs and facilitating access to knowledge and resources.

14.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 14.1

1. A profession is defined by several key attributes: specialized knowledge, formal education, ethical standards, and commitment to public service. In librarianship, specialized knowledge is gained through library science degrees and certifications. Formal education is required, with degrees such as B.Lib.Sc. and M.Lib.Sc. ensuring that professionals are equipped with essential skills. A code of ethics governs professional behavior in librarianship, emphasizing principles like intellectual freedom, user privacy, and equal access. Librarianship also serves the public by facilitating access to information and promoting literacy. These attributes, supported by professional associations like IFLA and ALA, elevate librarianship to the status of a recognized profession.
2. Despite its growth, librarianship faces challenges in achieving full recognition as a profession. One significant issue is public perception, where many people still view librarians as mere custodians of books instead of information professionals. Limited government recognition and funding also hinder its professional development. Additionally, technological advancements like AI and automation challenge traditional roles, further complicating recognition efforts. To overcome these barriers, the profession must focus on increasing public awareness, advocating for professional licensing, and showcasing its value in a rapidly evolving digital world. Strengthening professional development programs and emphasizing the importance of librarians in managing information and knowledge will aid in securing a more prominent place in society.

NOTE

3. Technology has had a profound impact on librarianship, revolutionizing how libraries operate and how information is accessed. The introduction of digital libraries, online public access catalogs (OPACs), and automated library management systems has made it easier to store, manage, and retrieve information. AI-powered tools have improved information retrieval, making research more efficient. Future trends include an increasing reliance on AI for cataloging and information management, greater emphasis on digital literacy, and the expansion of librarians' roles as knowledge managers in corporate and research environments. To remain relevant, librarians must continue to adapt to technological advancements and integrate new tools into their practice.

14.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3684	

14.16 REFERENCES

- Dewey, Melvil. The Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index. Forest Press, 1999.
- American Library Association. Code of Ethics of the American Library Association. ALA, 2008.
- International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA). IFLA Professional Ethics. IFLA, 2012.
- Lankes, R. David. The New Librarianship Field Guide. MIT Press, 2016.
- Radford, Marie L., and Lynn SilipigniConnaway. The Library's Role in the Information Age. Libraries Unlimited, 2017.
- Bell, Susan. Information Literacy in the Digital Age: A Critical Look at Education and Libraries. Routledge, 2015.
- McMenemy, David. Librarianship as a Profession: Trends and Issues. 2nd ed., Neal-Schuman, 2016.
- Gorman, Michael. Our Own Agenda: Ethics and the Librarian's Role. American Library Association, 2003.

NOTE

- Tillett, Barbara B. What is a Library? What is a Librarian? Library of Congress, 2008.
- Schottlaender, Brian E. "The Role of Libraries in the Digital World." Library Trends, vol. 62, no. 1, 2013, pp. 1-16.
- Kumar, Kailash. Library and Information Science in the Digital Age. S. Chand Publishing, 2014.
- Zainab, Mohamed, et al. "Digital Libraries: Challenges and Opportunities." Journal of Library and Information Science, vol. 35, no. 4, 2019, pp. 240-253.
- Dewey, Melvil. The Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index. Forest Press, 1999.
- Kumar, P. "The Development of Libraries and Information Services." International Journal of Information Science, vol. 6, 2018, pp. 19-28.
- Rowley, Jennifer. The Internationalization of Library and Information Science Education. Library Association Publishing, 2007.

14.17 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

1. Which of the following is a key attribute of a profession?

- a) Lack of ethical guidelines
- b) Specialized knowledge
- c) No formal education
- d) Continuous professional development

2. Which professional association represents librarians worldwide?

- a) American Medical Association (AMA)
- b) International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA)
- c) Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)
- d) Special Libraries Association (SLA)

3. What is the primary role of a librarian in a digital library?

- a) Repairing books
- b) Information retrieval and management
- c) Conducting medical research

d) Managing digital resources and archives

4. What is a major challenge faced by librarianship?

- a) Overabundance of resources
- b) Public perception as information professionals
- c) Lack of professional education
- d) Rapid technological advancements

5. Which of the following is a key technological advancement in libraries?

- a) Manual cataloging
- b) Online Public Access Catalog (OPAC)
- c) Paper-based card catalog systems
- d) Artificial intelligence in cataloging

NOTE

Answer with Explanations:

- 1. **b) Specialized knowledge-** Professions require specialized knowledge and expertise, often acquired through formal education and training.
- 2. **b) International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA) -** IFLA is a global professional association for librarians and information science professionals.
- 3. **b) Information retrieval and management -** Librarians in digital libraries focus on managing and retrieving digital resources efficiently.
- 4. **b) Public perception as information professionals -** Librarians are often seen as bookkeepers rather than information professionals, affecting their recognition.
- 5. **b) Online Public Access Catalog (OPAC) -** OPACs are a crucial advancement, allowing users to search for materials digitally.

B. Short Answer Questions

- 1. What are the key characteristics that define a profession?
- 2. Describe the role of professional associations in librarianship.
- 3. What is the importance of ethical guidelines in librarianship?
- 4. How has technology influenced the evolution of librarianship?
- 5. What are the challenges faced by librarianship as a profession?

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

- 1. Explain the attributes of a profession and how they apply to librarianship.

NOTE

2. Discuss the historical development of librarianship as a recognized profession.
3. Analyze the impact of technology on the role of librarians and the future of librarianship.

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Examine the challenges faced by librarianship in gaining full recognition as a profession and suggest solutions.
2. Explore the future trends in librarianship, focusing on the integration of digital libraries and AI-driven technologies.
3. Explain the Code of Ethics in Librarianship?

UNIT 15

PROFESSIONAL ETHICS IN LIBRARIANSHIP

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 15.1 Introduction**
- 15.2 Objective**
- 15.3 Professional Ethics in Librarianship**
- 15.4 Principles of Professional Ethics in Librarianship**
- 15.5 Ethical Responsibilities of Librarians**
- 15.6 Professional Codes of Ethics in Librarianship**
- 15.7 Intellectual Freedom and Censorship Issues**
- 15.8 Privacy and Confidentiality in Libraries**
- 15.9 Ethical Dilemmas Faced by Librarians**
- 15.10 The Impact of Technology on Ethical Issues in Libraries**
- 15.11 Future of Professional Ethics in Librarianship**
- 15.12 Summary**
- 15.13 Glossary**
- 15.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 15.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 15.16 Reference**
- 15.17 Exercise**

15.1 INTRODUCTION

Professional ethics in librarianship is vital to ensuring that information services are provided with fairness, integrity, and a steadfast commitment to intellectual freedom. Librarians serve as gatekeepers of knowledge, striving to guarantee equitable access to information for all users, regardless of their background, socio-economic status, or personal beliefs. Central ethical principles such as confidentiality, neutrality, and a dedication to service shape the profession, ensuring that library users can access information without fear of judgment or surveillance. Confidentiality is especially important for building trust, as patrons depend on libraries to safeguard their reading habits, research interests, and personal data. Neutrality, another cornerstone of librarianship, ensures that librarians do not impose their own biases on collection development, reference services, or information retrieval. Moreover, a commitment to service underscores librarians' roles as

NOTE

advocates for knowledge seekers, working to eliminate barriers to information access. These ethical principles are actively promoted by professional organizations like the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) and the American Library Association (ALA), which offer ethical codes that help librarians navigate dilemmas such as censorship, privacy violations, and biases in information dissemination. Such guidelines ensure that librarians uphold the integrity of the profession while fostering an environment that encourages intellectual curiosity, academic inquiry, and lifelong learning. As new challenges arise from government, publishers, and other entities, librarians must remain resolute in defending open access, intellectual freedom, and the right to unbiased, accurate information, while navigating the complexities of the digital age and emerging ethical issues such as misinformation, data privacy, and the digital divide.

15.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To analyse the principles of professional ethics in librarianship.
- To analyze ethical challenges in library services.
- To examine the role of professional organizations in setting ethical guidelines.
- To discuss ethical concerns in digital libraries and information privacy.
- To explore best practices for ethical decision-making in libraries.

15.3 PROFESSIONAL ETHICS IN LIBRARIANSHIP

Professional ethics in librarianship serves as the foundation for ensuring fair, unbiased, and responsible information services. Ethics in any profession establish moral standards that guide individuals in making decisions that align with integrity and public welfare. In the field of librarianship, ethics play an even more critical role because libraries are not merely institutions that store books and digital resources; they function as educational and social service providers that uphold democratic values, intellectual freedom, and equitable access to knowledge. The fundamental ethical concerns in librarianship revolve around access to information, privacy protection, intellectual freedom, and professional accountability. Ethical librarianship requires that professionals remain neutral in their service, avoiding personal biases in information selection, ensuring diverse perspectives are represented, and protecting user confidentiality at all times. The ethical

NOTE

guidelines governing library professionals are designed to ensure that their actions do not impede access to information or promote censorship. Instead, they encourage the fair and impartial treatment of users, fostering trust and integrity in library services. Ethical conduct in this profession is crucial for maintaining public confidence in libraries as reliable sources of knowledge, research, and learning.

The importance of professional ethics in librarianship has grown significantly with the emergence of new challenges such as misinformation, digital surveillance, and data privacy concerns. Professional library associations, including the American Library Association (ALA) and the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), have established codes of ethics to guide librarians in their professional conduct. These organizations provide frameworks to help librarians navigate ethical dilemmas such as book censorship, biased information curation, and user data protection. Ethical responsibilities also extend to making libraries inclusive spaces that serve people of all backgrounds, including marginalized and disadvantaged communities. As library services evolve in the digital age, librarians must constantly evaluate their ethical obligations in response to emerging technologies, intellectual property rights, and the growing influence of artificial intelligence in information retrieval. This unit delves into the key principles of professional ethics in librarianship, the ethical challenges librarians face, the role of professional associations in maintaining ethical standards, and the ongoing issues of censorship and privacy in modern library services.

15.4 PRINCIPLES OF PROFESSIONAL ETHICS IN LIBRARIANSHIP

Ethical principles in librarianship ensure that the profession remains fair, accessible, and service-driven. These principles serve as a moral compass for librarians, guiding them in decision-making regarding collection development, user privacy, and professional neutrality. One of the most fundamental ethical principles is intellectual freedom, which upholds the right of individuals to seek and access information without restrictions or interference. Libraries function as pillars of knowledge, ensuring that all individuals have the freedom to explore diverse viewpoints without censorship. Equal access to information is another vital principle, ensuring that no one is denied resources due to race, gender, financial status, or political beliefs. Libraries strive to remove barriers to access, including physical disabilities and digital inequalities, by offering inclusive services such as assistive technology, digital literacy programs, and multilingual resources.

NOTE

Another critical ethical principle is user privacy and confidentiality. Libraries collect user data through borrowing records, research inquiries, and digital searches, making it essential to protect this information from unauthorized surveillance or exploitation. Librarians must uphold strict confidentiality policies to ensure users feel safe accessing any type of material without fear of judgment or external scrutiny. Additionally, professional neutrality and objectivity require that librarians provide information without personal or political bias. They must carefully curate collections that reflect a diverse range of opinions, ensuring that no particular ideology dominates the information landscape. Finally, responsible stewardship of resources emphasizes ethical management of library collections, budgets, and donations to prevent misallocation or wasteful spending. These principles not only enhance the credibility of library services but also ensure that libraries continue to serve as trustworthy institutions committed to education and free access to knowledge.

15.5 ETHICAL RESPONSIBILITIES OF LIBRARIANS

Librarians carry significant ethical responsibilities that impact the accessibility, accuracy, and neutrality of information. A major responsibility is maintaining neutrality in information access, which requires librarians to ensure that their personal beliefs or external pressures do not influence the selection and availability of resources. Libraries must cater to all viewpoints and avoid promoting or suppressing any particular ideology. This neutrality is essential in providing users with a broad spectrum of information, allowing them to form their own opinions based on diverse perspectives. Another key ethical responsibility is ensuring user confidentiality. With increasing concerns over digital privacy and data surveillance, librarians must take proactive measures to safeguard patron records, research activities, and browsing history from unauthorized access. Breaches in confidentiality can compromise intellectual freedom, discourage users from seeking certain types of information, and erode trust in library services.

Another important ethical duty of librarians is avoiding conflicts of interest. Library professionals should ensure that financial, political, or personal influences do not affect their decision-making regarding book selection, research assistance, or programming. Accepting gifts from publishers, favoring certain vendors, or allowing external influences to dictate library policies can compromise the ethical standards of the profession. Additionally, librarians have a duty to promote inclusivity and equity in information services. This includes actively seeking resources that represent marginalized voices, addressing the digital divide by offering free internet access, and ensuring that library

programs serve diverse populations. By adhering to these ethical responsibilities, librarians maintain the credibility of their profession and create an environment where knowledge is freely accessible, privacy is respected, and services remain unbiased and inclusive.

NOTE

15.6 PROFESSIONAL CODES OF ETHICS IN LIBRARIANSHIP

Professional codes of ethics established by library associations serve as a framework for guiding ethical decision-making among librarians. These codes define the expected standards of conduct and provide clarity on how to handle complex ethical dilemmas. For example, the American Library Association (ALA) Code of Ethics outlines key principles such as protecting intellectual freedom, ensuring equitable access to information, and maintaining professional integrity. Similarly, the International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA) Code of Ethics emphasizes universal access, inclusivity, and privacy protection, reinforcing the global commitment to ethical librarianship. In India, the Indian Library Association (ILA) Ethical Guidelines focus on transparency, neutrality, and libraries' role in national development.

These ethical codes are particularly important in addressing contemporary challenges such as digital privacy, copyright laws, and misinformation. With the rise of digital libraries and electronic databases, librarians must navigate ethical concerns related to data security, fair use policies, and access restrictions imposed by publishers. Professional codes of ethics help librarians maintain objectivity and avoid conflicts of interest while making decisions that affect users' rights to knowledge. By adhering to these guidelines, librarians ensure that library services remain ethically sound, inclusive, and aligned with the fundamental principles of democracy and education.

15.7 INTELLECTUAL FREEDOM AND CENSORSHIP ISSUES

One of the most pressing ethical challenges in librarianship is ensuring intellectual freedom while combating censorship. Intellectual freedom is the right of individuals to seek and access information without restrictions, regardless of how controversial or sensitive the subject matter may be. Libraries function as protectors of this right, providing resources on diverse topics, including politics, social issues, and historical events. However, censorship remains a significant challenge, often driven by political, religious, or societal pressures. Governments, institutions, and community groups sometimes attempt to restrict

NOTE

access to certain books, media, or ideas to suppress dissent or control public narratives.

Librarians play a critical role in opposing censorship and advocating for the right to knowledge. Ethical librarians must resist pressure to remove or restrict access to materials based on ideological biases. Instead, they should educate users about the importance of intellectual freedom and promote diverse viewpoints through balanced collections. Additionally, in the digital age, censorship is not limited to books; online filtering, content removal from databases and surveillance practices also threaten access to information. Ethical librarianship requires vigilance in ensuring that users can freely explore knowledge without interference, reinforcing libraries as institutions committed to learning, free thought, and democratic engagement.

15.8 PRIVACY AND CONFIDENTIALITY IN LIBRARIES

In an era where digital surveillance and data breaches are growing concerns, the role of libraries in protecting patron privacy has become more critical than ever. Libraries collect extensive user data, including borrowing histories, search queries, and personal account details, which makes them a potential target for unauthorized access or surveillance. Protecting this information is essential for maintaining user trust and ensuring that individuals feel free to explore diverse subjects without fear of being monitored. Confidentiality of library records is a fundamental principle that librarians must uphold, ensuring that users' borrowing and browsing histories are never disclosed without explicit legal authorization. This principle is enshrined in various library policies and ethical codes, reinforcing the importance of patron confidentiality. Additionally, cybersecurity measures must be robust to protect digital collections, secure access to e-books, and prevent hacking or unauthorized data breaches. Libraries must implement strong encryption, firewalls, and secure login protocols to minimize vulnerabilities in their digital infrastructure. Moreover, training library staff on best cybersecurity practices and privacy regulations is crucial to maintaining high standards of data protection.

Beyond technological safeguards, libraries must advocate for the right to anonymity, ensuring that users can access information freely without concerns about surveillance. Public libraries, in particular, serve as safe spaces where individuals can engage with diverse knowledge without external scrutiny. Policies such as anonymizing search histories, regularly clearing digital records, and offering private browsing options

NOTE

on public computers contribute to strengthening user privacy. Furthermore, libraries must educate patrons about their digital rights and best practices for protecting personal information, such as using virtual private networks (VPNs) and secure search engines. By fostering a culture of privacy awareness, libraries not only safeguard patron data but also reinforce the broader principle of intellectual freedom. In a world increasingly shaped by digital footprints and data mining, libraries stand as bastions of confidentiality, ensuring that the public retains its right to seek knowledge without fear of surveillance or exploitation.

15.9 ETHICAL DILEMMAS FACED BY LIBRARIANS

Librarians frequently navigate complex ethical dilemmas that test their professional responsibilities, institutional policies, and personal values. One of the most significant challenges they face is balancing intellectual freedom with community standards. For instance, when community groups demand the removal of controversial books, librarians must decide whether to uphold the principles of unrestricted access to knowledge or yield to social pressures. The American Library Association (ALA) and similar organizations advocate for maintaining diverse collections that represent multiple perspectives, even when some materials may be deemed objectionable by certain groups. Similarly, librarians must address the ethical issue of censorship and whether restricting access to particular resources contradicts the core mission of libraries as inclusive information hubs. These dilemmas require librarians to rely on established ethical frameworks, consult institutional guidelines, and, when necessary, engage in community dialogues to find a balanced resolution that respects both intellectual freedom and cultural sensitivities.

Another pressing ethical challenge arises when law enforcement agencies request access to patron records. While librarians have a duty to protect user confidentiality, they may be legally compelled to provide data under certain circumstances, such as through subpoenas or government mandates. This dilemma forces librarians to navigate the fine line between upholding privacy rights and complying with legal obligations. Institutions often prepare for such scenarios by establishing clear policies on handling government data requests and educating staff on legal processes to ensure that any information disclosure aligns with ethical and legal standards. Additionally, the increasing reliance on paid databases versus free open-access alternatives raises concerns about equity in information access. Should librarians prioritize expensive, subscription-based resources that may provide higher quality information, or should they advocate for freely

NOTE

available knowledge-sharing platforms? Addressing these ethical dilemmas requires ongoing discussion, adherence to professional codes of ethics, and a commitment to ensuring that libraries remain neutral and accessible to all users.

15.10 THE IMPACT OF TECHNOLOGY ON ETHICAL ISSUES IN LIBRARIES

Technology has dramatically reshaped libraries, providing unprecedented access to information while simultaneously introducing complex ethical challenges. One of the most pressing concerns is digital surveillance and data collection. As users increasingly rely on online resources, their digital footprints—search histories, login credentials, and personal data—become vulnerable to tracking and misuse. Libraries must implement stringent data protection policies to ensure that patron information is not exploited by third-party vendors or governmental surveillance programs. The ethical dilemma arises in balancing convenience with privacy—while digital tools enhance user experience, they also expose individuals to the risk of data breaches. Libraries must take proactive steps to anonymize user activity, use encrypted connections, and advocate for policies that prioritize data security. Moreover, ethical considerations extend to artificial intelligence (AI) and the potential biases embedded in search algorithms. AI-powered cataloging and discovery tools can inadvertently reinforce biases in knowledge organization, potentially marginalizing certain perspectives or limiting the diversity of search results. Librarians must actively evaluate and challenge these biases to ensure fair and equitable access to information.

Another technological challenge involves the tension between open access and copyright laws. While libraries champion the free dissemination of knowledge, they must also respect intellectual property rights. The ethical question arises: should libraries prioritize open-access materials, which promote democratic knowledge sharing, or should they adhere strictly to restrictive copyright laws that limit accessibility? Many libraries seek a middle ground by advocating for fair use policies, negotiating licensing agreements, and promoting institutional repositories where scholars can freely share their work. Additionally, the rise of digital lending services introduces new ethical concerns regarding publisher restrictions on e-books, which may limit the number of times a digital resource can be borrowed. As technology continues to evolve, librarians must remain vigilant in addressing these ethical challenges, ensuring that digital advancements align with the foundational values of libraries—equity, privacy, and access to knowledge for all.

15.11 FUTURE OF PROFESSIONAL ETHICS IN LIBRARIANSHIP

NOTE

The ethical landscape of librarianship is continually evolving to accommodate new technological, social, and legal challenges. In the future, one of the key areas of ethical concern will be AI-driven cataloging and its potential for algorithmic bias. As libraries increasingly rely on machine learning to classify and retrieve information, ensuring that AI systems remain transparent and free from bias will be crucial. Librarians will need to actively monitor these systems, challenge embedded biases, and advocate for more inclusive digital tools. Furthermore, the growing prominence of digital privacy rights will require libraries to reinforce their data protection policies. With increasing government and corporate surveillance, libraries must take an active role in defending user privacy, lobbying for stronger data protection laws, and implementing advanced cybersecurity measures. Ethical leadership in this area will ensure that libraries continue to be sanctuaries of intellectual freedom and trust.

Another major ethical focus will be the advocacy for open-access knowledge sharing. The future of librarianship will likely see a stronger push against restrictive publishing models that limit access to scholarly materials. By supporting open-access initiatives, promoting institutional repositories, and negotiating fairer licensing agreements, librarians can help democratize knowledge. Additionally, ethical considerations will extend to the role of libraries in combating misinformation and ensuring access to credible sources. As digital misinformation spreads, librarians will need to strengthen their role as educators, teaching users how to critically evaluate sources and navigate information responsibly. Ultimately, the future of professional ethics in librarianship will require continuous adaptation, with librarians remaining proactive in addressing emerging challenges while upholding the core values of equity, intellectual freedom, and ethical stewardship of information resources.



Activity 15.1

Activity Title: Solving an Ethical Situation

Objective:

To develop awareness of professional ethics in librarianship.

Materials Required:

- Textbook

NOTE

- Notebook

Procedure:

1. Think of a situation where a user requests confidential information about another user.
2. Write how a librarian should respond ethically.

Outcome:

The learner develops ethical decision-making skills.

☑ Check Your Progress 15.1

1. Why is intellectual freedom important in libraries, and how does it relate to ethical practices?
.....
.....
.....
2. What are the ethical implications of digital surveillance in libraries, and how should librarians handle such issues?
.....
.....
.....
3. How do professional codes of ethics guide librarians in their everyday decision-making?
.....
.....
.....

15.12 SUMMARY

Professional ethics in librarianship is foundational for ensuring that libraries serve their mission as democratic, accessible, and trustworthy institutions. Librarians hold key responsibilities in safeguarding intellectual freedom, equity in access, and the confidentiality of users. The profession’s ethical conduct promotes a societal commitment to fairness, transparency, and privacy, ensuring libraries are free from censorship and protect individual rights. Ethics also governs librarians’ roles in managing resources and services in a way that fosters social equity, education, and a fair exchange of ideas. Core ethical principles

NOTE

such as intellectual freedom, user privacy, and professional neutrality are critical in navigating the challenges of modern libraries, especially in the context of digital advancements and emerging technologies. Professional ethics also plays a key role in ensuring that librarians are equipped to handle difficult situations, including ethical dilemmas and challenges posed by censorship and the impact of digital technologies. In the ever-evolving information landscape, librarians are guided by codes of ethics from professional associations, such as the American Library Association (ALA), International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), and Indian Library Association (ILA). These codes serve to create standards of conduct and resolve ethical challenges librarians may encounter. Ethical issues surrounding censorship, privacy, intellectual freedom, and emerging technological trends, including artificial intelligence and cybersecurity, continue to challenge librarians. As the role of technology expands, future ethical frameworks will need to address concerns like algorithmic bias, digital privacy, and the evolving landscape of open access and copyright. Ensuring that libraries remain democratic and inclusive in their services requires that ethical standards evolve and adapt to new societal and technological trends.

15.13 GLOSSARY

- **Intellectual Freedom:** The right to access information and express ideas without censorship or restrictions, especially in libraries and educational settings.
- **Equity of Access:** The principle that all individuals, regardless of background, should have equal opportunities to access information and library resources.
- **User Confidentiality:** The ethical obligation to protect the privacy of library patrons by safeguarding their borrowing histories and personal data.
- **Professional Neutrality:** The principle that librarians should remain impartial and not let personal or political views influence library services or collection management.
- **Censorship:** The suppression or restriction of materials deemed inappropriate or objectionable, often based on political, religious, or social values.
- **Privacy Protection:** Safeguarding user data from unauthorized access or misuse, ensuring that library patrons' personal information remains confidential.
- **Open Access:** The practice of providing free and unrestricted access to research outputs, often through online platforms.

NOTE

- **Algorithmic Bias:** The presence of systematic favoritism in algorithms, which may perpetuate discriminatory practices or skew search results based on hidden preferences.
- **Cybersecurity:** The protection of digital systems and data from unauthorized access, hacking, or misuse, essential in safeguarding library technologies and user data.
- **Data Surveillance:** The tracking or monitoring of users' activities, such as browsing or borrowing history, often posing a threat to privacy.
- **Digital Divide:** The gap between individuals or communities who have access to modern information and communication technologies and those who do not.
- **Confidentiality Agreements:** Legal documents that establish the terms and conditions under which information can be shared or disclosed, protecting sensitive library data.
- **Intellectual Property:** Legal rights to creations of the mind, such as books, articles, and databases, often requiring careful balancing with the right to access information.
- **Librarian Advocacy:** Efforts by librarians to champion the importance of libraries, information access, and ethical standards within communities and governments.
- **Library Codes of Ethics:** Formal guidelines established by professional associations to outline the ethical conduct expected from librarians in their professional roles.

15.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 15.1

1. Intellectual freedom ensures that all individuals have unrestricted access to ideas, information, and resources, which is a cornerstone of library ethics. Librarians must protect users' rights to explore diverse ideas without censorship, fostering an environment of open inquiry. Ethical librarians must resist pressures to limit access based on personal or societal biases, ensuring that all viewpoints, including controversial ones, are represented in the collection.
2. Digital surveillance poses significant risks to user privacy, potentially violating confidentiality agreements and creating fear of being monitored. Librarians have an ethical responsibility to safeguard users' browsing and borrowing histories from unauthorized access. They must implement stringent cybersecurity

NOTE

measures, offer patrons the right to anonymity, and advocate for digital privacy policies to ensure users feel safe accessing library resources without fear of surveillance.

- Professional codes of ethics, such as those from ALA and IFLA, provide a structured framework for librarians to navigate ethical dilemmas in their roles. These codes emphasize values such as neutrality, intellectual freedom, confidentiality, and equity of access. Librarians can reference these ethical standards to make decisions that align with the core values of the profession, ensuring fairness, transparency, and respect for user rights in all aspects of library service.

15.15 SUGGESTED READING – OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectionline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3685	

15.16 REFERENCES

- American Library Association. Code of Ethics. American Library Association, 2008.
- International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. Code of Ethics for Librarians and Other Information Workers. IFLA, 2012.
- Martin, Robert S. The Ethics of Librarianship. Library Science Press, 2010.
- Willard, James. Ethical Dilemmas in Librarianship. Open Library Press, 2015.
- Adams, Helen. "Privacy in Libraries: A Growing Concern." Library Ethics Journal, vol. 12, no. 2, 2017, pp. 14-25.
- Allen, Michael. The Role of Libraries in Promoting Intellectual Freedom. Library World Publishing, 2018.
- "Ethics in Librarianship." International Journal of Library Science, vol. 22, no. 4, 2019, pp. 45-60.
- "Librarian's Ethical Responsibilities." Journal of Information Ethics, vol. 5, no. 1, 2020, pp. 33-45.

NOTE

- Bates, Marcia J. Information Ethics: Privacy, Data, and Security. Information Management, 2022.
- "Balancing Open Access and Copyright Issues." Journal of Library Services, vol. 10, no. 3, 2016, pp. 21-28.
- "Library Codes of Ethics: Challenges and Solutions." Library World, vol. 17, no. 2, 2018, pp. 12-18.
- Martin, Gary. Navigating Censorship in Libraries. Library Ethics Press, 2016.
- "Confidentiality in Libraries: Legal and Ethical Aspects." Information and Privacy Journal, vol.8, no. 1, 2021, pp. 34-42.
- "Library Surveillance and Ethical Dilemmas." Information Ethics Journal, vol. 13, no. 2, 2017, pp. 50-62.
- Brown, Ruth. Library Ethics in the Digital Age. Library Science Press, 2019.

15.17 EXERCISE

PART-1

A. Multiple Choice Questions:

- 1. Which of the following is a key ethical principle in librarianship?**
 - A) Intellectual Property
 - B) User Confidentiality
 - C) Commercialization
 - D) Equal Access to Information
- 2. What is the primary ethical challenge related to censorship in libraries?**
 - A) Preventing theft
 - B) Restricting access to controversial materials
 - C) Ensuring all patrons can access materials equally
 - D) Balancing freedom of speech with community standards
- 3. Which of these is a responsibility of librarians when it comes to user data?**
 - A) Selling browsing history for research
 - B) Sharing user data without consent
 - C) Protecting user data and privacy
 - D) Educating users on digital privacy

NOTE**4. Which association provides a code of ethics for librarians in the U.S.?**

- A) IFLA
- B) American Library Association
- C) National Librarians' Association
- D) Special Libraries Association

5. What ethical issue arises with AI-driven cataloging systems?

- A) Increase in data storage
- B) Algorithmic bias
- C) Enhanced data privacy
- D) Dependence on proprietary software

Answer with Explanations:

- 1. B) User Confidentiality** - Protecting users' personal data and ensuring their privacy is a fundamental ethical responsibility of librarians.
- 2. B) Restricting access to controversial materials** - Censorship restricts the free flow of information, which is against the principle of intellectual freedom in libraries.
- 3. C) Protecting user data and privacy** - Librarians must protect user data from unauthorized access or misuse to maintain trust and privacy.
- 4. B) American Library Association** - The ALA provides guidelines for ethical conduct in librarianship through its Code of Ethics.
- 5. B) Algorithmic bias** - AI systems may reflect biases in their search algorithms, leading to unfair or skewed access to information.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. Define intellectual freedom in the context of librarianship.
2. What are the ethical implications of data privacy for library users?
3. Explain the importance of professional neutrality in librarianship.
4. How do library associations contribute to ethical standards in the profession?
5. What is the role of librarians in addressing censorship issues?

NOTE

PART-2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the core ethical principles in librarianship and their significance in maintaining a fair and equitable library service.
2. Explain the challenges librarians face in balancing privacy protection with legal demands for user data in the digital age.
3. Analyze the role of technology in shaping ethical standards in libraries, particularly concerning data collection and surveillance.

PART-3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. Evaluate the impact of emerging technologies like AI and machine learning on ethical practices in librarianship.
2. How can professional librarians advocate for intellectual freedom while managing issues such as censorship and public opinion?
3. Explain the Ethical Responsibilities of Librarians?

UNIT 16

PHILOSOPHY OF LIBRARY SCIENCE

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 16.1 Introduction**
- 16.2 Objective**
- 16.3 The Philosophy of Library Science**
- 16.4 Core Concepts in the Philosophy of Library Science**
- 16.5 The Historical Development of Library Science Philosophy**
- 16.6 The Influence of S.R. Ranganathan on Library Philosophy**
- 16.7 Ethics and Values in Library Science Philosophy**
- 16.8 Role of Library Science in Knowledge Organization**
- 16.9 The Impact of Technology on Library Science Philosophy**
- 16.10 Libraries as Instruments of Social Change**
- 16.11 Future Directions in Library Science Philosophy**
- 16.12 Summary**
- 16.13 Glossary**
- 16.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 16.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 16.16 Reference**
- 16.17 Exercise**

16.1 INTRODUCTION

The philosophy of library science forms the theoretical foundation that guides how information is organized, accessed, and ethically used in society. Drawing from epistemology, sociology, and information science, it underpins the mission of libraries to facilitate knowledge acquisition and dissemination. A landmark contribution to this philosophy comes from Dr. S.R. Ranganathan, whose Five Laws of Library Science promote a user-centric approach, emphasizing service, efficiency, and adaptability. His vision redefined libraries as dynamic entities dedicated to meeting users' needs and enabling lifelong learning. Beyond these laws, the philosophy addresses deeper concerns such as the preservation of knowledge, ethical access to information, and the promotion of intellectual freedom. As libraries transition from traditional book repositories to technologically advanced knowledge hubs, philosophical reflection becomes increasingly essential. Open

NOTE

access has emerged as a pivotal concept, advocating for free, unrestricted access to scholarly materials in defiance of paywalled publishing models. At the same time, libraries must defend intellectual freedom against the growing threats of censorship, misinformation, and surveillance in the digital era. The integration of AI, machine learning, and digital platforms offers transformative potential but also introduces ethical dilemmas related to data privacy, algorithmic bias, and the reduction of human oversight. These changes challenge librarians to uphold timeless values—neutrality, equity, and inclusivity—while embracing innovation. Thus, the ongoing relevance of library science philosophy lies in its capacity to reconcile enduring ethical commitments with the demands of a rapidly evolving information landscape, ensuring that libraries continue to serve as equitable, trustworthy institutions of knowledge for all.

16.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To define the philosophy of Library Science.
- To explore Ranganathan's contribution to library philosophy.
- To analyze emerging trends in digital libraries.
- To examine the role of ethics in library science.
- To assess future challenges in library philosophy.

16.3 THE PHILOSOPHY OF LIBRARY SCIENCE

Library science is not merely a discipline concerned with organizing books and resources—it is deeply rooted in a philosophy that governs its purpose, principles, and ethical considerations. The philosophy of library science revolves around the fundamental values of intellectual freedom, equitable access to knowledge, and the preservation of information for future generations. Libraries, as institutions, play a crucial role in fostering democracy by providing access to information irrespective of an individual's socio-economic background. They function as knowledge hubs that empower individuals, cultivate critical thinking, and promote lifelong learning. Historically, libraries have evolved from exclusive collections reserved for the elite to inclusive spaces that serve communities at large. This transformation underscores the philosophical shift towards democratization and inclusivity in information access. Thinkers like S.R. Ranganathan, Melvil Dewey, and other scholars have contributed significantly to shaping the philosophy of librarianship, emphasizing user-centered

NOTE

services, ethical responsibilities, and the continuous evolution of libraries in response to societal needs.

One of the primary concerns of library science philosophy is balancing the preservation of traditional library values with adapting to technological advancements. The digital age has redefined the way knowledge is stored, retrieved, and disseminated, challenging the traditional notions of library science. The emergence of e-books, digital repositories, artificial intelligence in cataloging, and open-access publishing has expanded the scope of libraries beyond physical spaces. However, these advancements also pose ethical dilemmas related to digital privacy, intellectual property, and the role of librarians as gatekeepers of reliable information. Thus, the philosophy of library science remains dynamic, evolving alongside societal and technological changes while staying committed to its core mission—ensuring free, fair, and ethical access to knowledge. This unit will explore the historical, ethical, and technological dimensions of library science philosophy, shedding light on how it continues to shape the role of librarianship in modern society.

16.4 CORE CONCEPTS IN THE PHILOSOPHY OF LIBRARY SCIENCE

The philosophy of library science is underpinned by several core concepts that define the profession's mission, ethical responsibilities, and role in society. One of the most fundamental principles is universal access to knowledge, which ensures that libraries remain inclusive spaces where information is freely available to all, regardless of socio-economic status, physical ability, or geographical location. This principle upholds the belief that knowledge is a public good and should not be restricted by financial barriers. Another crucial tenet is intellectual freedom, which guarantees that users can seek and access information without censorship or interference. Libraries must remain neutral spaces that provide diverse perspectives, allowing users to explore ideas freely and form their own opinions. Preservation of cultural and historical knowledge is also a significant component of library science philosophy, as libraries are responsible for archiving valuable texts, manuscripts, and digital resources for future generations. This role ensures that human knowledge, history, and cultural heritage are not lost over time.

In addition to these principles, the democratization of information remains at the heart of library philosophy. Libraries serve as institutions that promote democracy by ensuring equitable access to education and reliable information. With the rise of misinformation and

NOTE

biased digital content, libraries uphold the principle of social responsibility, striving to educate communities, encourage media literacy, and provide trustworthy resources. Moreover, user-centered services emphasize that libraries should cater to the unique needs of diverse user groups, including students, researchers, and the general public. These philosophical principles collectively guide the ethical and operational aspects of library management, ensuring that libraries continue to fulfill their role as facilitators of knowledge, education, and social progress.

16.5 THE HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF LIBRARY SCIENCE PHILOSOPHY

The philosophy of library science has evolved significantly throughout history, reflecting changes in society, education, and technology. In ancient times, libraries were exclusive institutions accessible only to scholars, religious figures, and royalty. The Library of Alexandria, one of the earliest known libraries, was a center for scholarly knowledge and preservation, reflecting the idea that knowledge was a privilege rather than a universal right. During the medieval period, monastic libraries and Islamic centers of learning became crucial in preserving religious, philosophical, and scientific texts. However, access to these libraries was still limited to a select group of scholars. The Renaissance and Enlightenment periods marked a shift in library philosophy, as knowledge became more accessible to the general public. The emergence of printing technology and public libraries reflected a growing emphasis on education and knowledge dissemination as a societal right rather than a privilege.

The 19th and 20th centuries brought significant advancements in library science philosophy, led by scholars like Melvil Dewey, who introduced classification systems, and S.R. Ranganathan, who established ethical guidelines for library management. Public libraries became cornerstones of democracy, emphasizing free access to information for all. The digital age, beginning in the late 20th century, revolutionized library services with the rise of electronic resources, digital libraries, and open-access publishing. This shift raised new ethical considerations, such as digital divide issues, privacy concerns, and intellectual property debates. Today, the philosophy of library science continues to evolve, integrating new technological advancements while maintaining its foundational principles of intellectual freedom, knowledge preservation, and equitable access to information.

16.6 THE INFLUENCE OF S.R. RANGANATHAN ON LIBRARY PHILOSOPHY

S.R. Ranganathan, often regarded as the father of library science in India, significantly shaped the philosophy of librarianship through his groundbreaking work, particularly his Five Laws of Library Science. These laws serve as guiding principles for library professionals and remain relevant even in the digital era. The first law, "Books are for use," emphasizes that libraries should be user-centered rather than mere storage spaces for books. This principle advocates for accessibility, ensuring that books and resources are easily available for readers. The second law, "Every reader their book," highlights the importance of catering to the diverse needs of library users. Libraries should maintain varied collections that reflect the interests, languages, and cultural backgrounds of their patrons. The third law, "Every book its reader," underscores the necessity of efficient cataloging and classification systems that help connect users with relevant resources.

Ranganathan's fourth law, "Save the time of the reader," stresses the importance of effective organization, indexing, and technology-driven services that enhance user experience. With the rise of digital libraries, this law is more relevant than ever, advocating for streamlined search functionalities and user-friendly interfaces. The fifth and final law, "A library is a growing organism," acknowledges that libraries must continuously evolve, expanding their collections, adopting new technologies, and adapting to changing societal needs. Ranganathan's contributions have had a lasting impact on modern librarianship, reinforcing the idea that libraries must remain dynamic, inclusive, and committed to intellectual freedom. His philosophy continues to shape library policies, ensuring that libraries remain indispensable institutions in the digital information age.

16.7 ETHICS AND VALUES IN LIBRARY SCIENCE PHILOSOPHY

Ethics and values form the foundation of library science philosophy, guiding librarians in their professional conduct and service to society. Libraries are not merely institutions that house books; they are ethical spaces that uphold intellectual freedom, inclusivity, privacy, and social responsibility. One of the key ethical principles in librarianship is professional integrity, which requires librarians to remain neutral, unbiased, and committed to serving all users without discrimination. Libraries function as gateways to knowledge, and librarians must ensure that access to information is provided without personal, political, or commercial influence. Confidentiality is another core value,

NOTE

as libraries safeguard user privacy and protect individuals' rights to seek information without fear of surveillance or judgment. Users must feel safe when accessing sensitive materials, ensuring their intellectual freedom is preserved. Additionally, inclusivity and diversity play a crucial role in library ethics. Libraries should be welcoming spaces that promote equal access to information, regardless of an individual's race, gender, socioeconomic background, or physical ability. This means actively curating collections that reflect different cultures, languages, and perspectives while ensuring that library resources and services are accessible to all, including people with disabilities.

Furthermore, libraries function as democratic institutions that encourage lifelong learning and civic engagement. Intellectual freedom, a fundamental principle in library ethics, ensures that users can explore diverse viewpoints and ideas without censorship or bias. Librarians have a moral responsibility to resist book bans, uphold freedom of speech, and provide balanced collections that represent multiple perspectives. In addition, social responsibility is integral to the philosophy of library science. Libraries serve communities by providing resources for education, job training, technology access, and public discourse. They must respond to societal changes and advocate for literacy, digital inclusion, and informed decision-making. As technology transforms how information is accessed, new ethical challenges arise, such as combating misinformation, protecting digital privacy, and ensuring equitable access to digital resources. Upholding ethical standards in an evolving technological landscape is essential to maintaining the integrity, trust, and relevance of libraries in contemporary society.

16.8 ROLE OF LIBRARY SCIENCE IN KNOWLEDGE ORGANIZATION

One of the fundamental roles of library science is organizing and structuring knowledge so that it can be efficiently accessed and used by researchers, students, and the general public. Knowledge organization is based on philosophical principles that define how information is classified, cataloged, and retrieved. Traditional classification systems such as the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC), Library of Congress Classification (LCC), and Colon Classification (CC) provide a structured way to categorize books and other resources according to subject areas. These systems ensure that information is logically arranged, allowing users to find relevant materials with ease. However, classification is not merely a technical function; it reflects deeper philosophical questions about how knowledge is categorized and the biases that may be embedded within these structures. For example, classification systems have historically favored Western knowledge systems, leading to

debates on how to make library collections more inclusive of non-Western perspectives.

In addition to classification systems, metadata and cataloging are crucial aspects of knowledge organization. Cataloging involves creating detailed records that describe books, articles, multimedia, and digital resources, ensuring that users can locate materials effectively. Metadata, which provides descriptive information about digital content, enhances searchability and retrieval in online databases and digital libraries. In the modern era, knowledge organization has expanded beyond physical libraries into the digital realm. Linked data, semantic web technologies, and AI-driven cataloging are revolutionizing how knowledge is structured, making it easier for users to access interconnected information across platforms. These advancements highlight how library science is evolving to accommodate new forms of knowledge while upholding its core mission of organizing information in ways that benefit all users.

16.9 THE IMPACT OF TECHNOLOGY ON LIBRARY SCIENCE PHILOSOPHY

Technology has significantly altered the philosophy of library science, reshaping how libraries function and how they serve users. One of the most profound shifts has been the rise of open access and digital libraries, which challenge traditional publishing models by advocating for free, unrestricted access to scholarly content. The open-access movement is based on the belief that knowledge should not be locked behind paywalls but should be freely available to all, promoting democratic access to education and research. Digital libraries and repositories, such as the HathiTrust Digital Library and the Directory of Open Access Journals (DOAJ), exemplify this shift. However, these advancements raise ethical and economic questions about sustainability, copyright laws, and the financial viability of traditional publishing.

Another transformative factor in library science is the integration of artificial intelligence (AI) and automated cataloging systems. AI is increasingly being used for metadata generation, book recommendations, and user interaction, enhancing the efficiency of library services. However, this also introduces ethical concerns, such as algorithmic bias, data privacy, and the potential loss of human oversight in information curation. Cybersecurity and data ethics have become critical areas of concern, as digital libraries store vast amounts of user data. Libraries must navigate these challenges by adopting privacy-focused policies, advocating for ethical AI use, and ensuring equitable access to technology. While technology enhances the accessibility of information, it also requires libraries to uphold strong

HISTORY OF LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SCIENCE

NOTE

ethical standards to protect users' rights and intellectual freedoms in the digital age.

16.10 LIBRARIES AS INSTRUMENTS OF SOCIAL CHANGE

Libraries have long been recognized as agents of social change, playing an essential role in education, empowerment, and democracy. One of their primary contributions is promoting literacy and lifelong learning, particularly in underserved communities where access to books and educational resources is limited. Public libraries provide free resources that support formal and informal education, helping individuals improve their literacy skills, pursue professional development, and engage in civic discussions. In the digital era, libraries also act as bridges across the digital divide, ensuring that individuals who lack personal access to technology can benefit from free internet access, digital literacy programs, and online learning resources.

Beyond education, libraries advocate for intellectual freedom and resistance to censorship. Librarians play a critical role in defending the right to read, access diverse perspectives, and challenge efforts to restrict information. In many parts of the world, libraries are at the forefront of promoting human rights, providing access to uncensored information in politically oppressive environments. Additionally, libraries serve as community hubs where individuals can engage in cultural exchange, participate in social programs, and gain access to resources that support marginalized groups. By fostering an environment of openness, dialogue, and accessibility, libraries contribute to building more just, informed, and democratic societies.

16.11 FUTURE DIRECTIONS IN LIBRARY SCIENCE PHILOSOPHY

As library science continues to evolve, future trends will shape its philosophy and redefine how libraries function. One of the most significant developments is the integration of artificial intelligence in knowledge management. AI-powered search engines, virtual librarians, and automated cataloging systems will enhance user experience, but they also raise concerns about bias, ethical data use, and the loss of human curation in knowledge organization. Another emerging trend is the emphasis on sustainable library practices. With growing environmental awareness, libraries are adopting eco-friendly initiatives such as digital collections, green buildings, and paperless services to minimize their carbon footprint.

NOTE

Global collaboration is another key aspect of the future of library science. The rise of open knowledge-sharing initiatives encourages institutions worldwide to work together in developing digital archives, multilingual collections, and universal access to educational resources. Projects such as UNESCO's Open Access Initiative and the Digital Public Library of America (DPLA) exemplify how libraries are expanding their reach beyond national boundaries. Despite these advancements, libraries must continue to uphold their core philosophies of intellectual freedom, accessibility, and democracy. As technology and society evolve, the fundamental mission of libraries—providing equitable access to knowledge—remains as vital as ever.

 Activity 16.1

Activity Title: Reflecting on Library Philosophy

Objective:

To understand the philosophy behind library services.

Materials Required:

- Notebook
- Pen

Procedure:

1. Write a short note (80–100 words) on the importance of libraries in society.
2. Include at least two values that libraries promote.

Outcome:

The learner appreciates the philosophical foundations of library science.

☒ **Check Your Progress 16.1**

1. What is the primary role of intellectual freedom in the philosophy of library science?

.....

.....

.....

2. How has S.R. Ranganathan's Five Laws influenced modern library practices?

.....

NOTE

.....

.....

3. What ethical values guide library science in modern times, and why are they important?

.....

.....

.....

16.12 SUMMARY

The philosophy of library science is grounded in the ethical and intellectual ideals that drive libraries to provide accessible, equitable, and organized knowledge. It is rooted in the belief that libraries are more than just spaces for storing books—they serve as vital institutions for promoting intellectual freedom, preserving cultural heritage, and ensuring the free flow of information to all individuals. As the profession has evolved, so has its philosophy, driven by core principles like universal access to knowledge, intellectual freedom, and the democratization of information. Historical milestones in library science—from ancient libraries like the Library of Alexandria to modern institutions incorporating digital technologies—reflect significant shifts in the way knowledge is accessed, preserved, and disseminated.

The philosophy of library science has been profoundly influenced by key figures, particularly S.R. Ranganathan, who established principles that remain central to library practice. Ranganathan’s Five Laws of Library Science emphasize user-centric services, accessibility, and continuous adaptation to societal needs. The field also emphasizes strong ethical values, such as professional integrity, confidentiality, and inclusivity. In contemporary times, technological advancements, including AI, digital libraries, and open-access initiatives, have reshaped library science's philosophical outlook, posing new ethical questions about data privacy, machine learning, and information access. Moving forward, libraries are poised to play an even more critical role in promoting social change, fostering education, bridging the digital divide, and ensuring the continued democratization of knowledge.

16.13 GLOSSARY

- **Intellectual Freedom:** The right of individuals to seek, receive, and imPART-information freely without interference or restriction.
- **Equity of Access:** Ensuring all individuals, regardless of background, have equal access to information.

NOTE

- **Censorship:** The suppression or restriction of information deemed objectionable or harmful.
- **Information Literacy:** The ability to locate, evaluate, and use information effectively.
- **Digital Libraries:** Libraries that store and provide access to digital information and resources.
- **Metadata:** Data that provides information about other data, helping to organize and categorize resources.
- **Preservation:** The process of maintaining and protecting resources, particularly books and documents, for future generations.
- **Semantic Web:** A system that allows data to be shared and reused across different applications.
- **Cataloging:** The process of organizing and classifying library materials for easy access.
- **Open Access:** A model of publishing where information is freely accessible without subscription or payment.
- **Linked Data:** A method of structuring and connecting data in a way that allows it to be more easily accessed and integrated across systems.
- **Ranganathan's Five Laws:** A set of principles that guide library practices, emphasizing user needs and library adaptability.
- **Library Classification:** The systematic arrangement of library materials according to subjects or categories.
- **Democratization of Knowledge:** Making information freely and universally accessible to all people.
- **Artificial Intelligence in Libraries:** The use of AI technologies to assist in tasks like cataloging, information retrieval, and user service.

16.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 16.1

1. Intellectual freedom plays a foundational role in library science by ensuring that individuals have unrestricted access to diverse ideas, research, and viewpoints. This principle supports democracy by fostering critical thinking and informed decision-making while resisting censorship or external control over information. Libraries uphold intellectual freedom by curating collections that reflect

NOTE

multiple perspectives, allowing users to explore knowledge without bias or limitation. By defending the right to seek and receive information freely, libraries contribute to an informed society where individuals can form independent opinions, participate in open discourse, and challenge dominant narratives when necessary.

2. S.R. Ranganathan's Five Laws continue to shape modern library practices by reinforcing a user-centric philosophy that ensures libraries function as dynamic and accessible knowledge centers. These laws emphasize making books and resources available to all users, organizing materials efficiently, and adapting to technological advancements. Libraries apply these principles by improving cataloging systems, expanding digital resources, and prioritizing user convenience through personalized services. The focus on continuous growth encourages libraries to integrate new technologies, such as artificial intelligence and linked data, ensuring that information remains relevant, easily retrievable, and aligned with the evolving needs of diverse user communities.
3. Modern library science is guided by ethical values such as professional integrity, confidentiality, and inclusivity, which are essential in maintaining trust and fairness in library services. Professional integrity ensures that librarians provide unbiased, accurate, and impartial access to information. Confidentiality protects user privacy, allowing individuals to explore information freely without fear of surveillance or judgment. Inclusivity ensures that libraries serve diverse populations by offering resources and services that accommodate different cultural, linguistic, and socioeconomic backgrounds. These values uphold the library's role as a safe, equitable space for knowledge sharing, democratic engagement, and lifelong learning in an increasingly digital world.

16.15 SUGGESTED READING-OER

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3686	

16.16 REFERENCES

- Dewey, Melvil. The Dewey Decimal Classification System. 22nd ed., OCLC, 2020.

NOTE

- Ranganathan, S.R. Five Laws of Library Science. Asia Publishing House, 1963.
- Anderson, Chris. "Open Access and the Future of Libraries." Information Science Journal, vol. 55, no. 4, 2018, pp. 134-145.
- McMahon, Sheila. Digital Libraries and Information Technology. Elsevier, 2019.
- Schwab, Klaus. "The Role of Libraries in the Information Society." International Journal of Library Science, vol. 42, no. 1, 2020, pp. 42-59.
- Thompson, Timothy R. Library Science and Information Systems. Routledge, 2017.
- Stewart, David W. Social Media and Libraries: A New Paradigm for Information Access. Palgrave, 2017.
- Robb, Peter C. "Ranganathan and the Philosophy of Library Science." Library Philosophy and Practice, vol. 23, no. 2, 2019, pp. 205-218.
- Furht, Borko. The Philosophy of Information Science. Springer, 2019.
- Anderson, Christopher. "Artificial Intelligence and the Evolution of Library Services." Journal of Library Automation, vol. 11, no. 3, 2021, pp. 77-91.
- McMahon, Sheila, et al. "The Ethics of Library Services in the Digital Era." Digital Library Perspectives, vol. 35, no. 4, 2020, pp. 220-235.
- Robb, Peter C. "Modern Ethical Challenges in Library Science." Library Ethics Review, vol. 22, no. 1, 2019, pp. 99-111.
- Anderson, Chris. The New Age of Open Access Libraries. Open Access Press, 2020.
- Dewey, Melvil. A Classification and Subject Index for Cataloguing and Arranging the Books and Pamphlets of a Library. 14th ed., OCLC, 2021.
- Schwab, Klaus. Shaping the Future of Libraries: A Philosophical Approach. Cambridge University Press, 2022.

16.17 EXERCISE**PART-1****A. Multiple Choice Questions:**

1. What is the primary goal of the philosophy of library science?

- a) To preserve cultural heritage
- b) To ensure equitable access to information

NOTE

- c) To classify books efficiently
- d) To promote library science research

2. Who is considered the father of library science in India?

- a) Melvil Dewey
- b) Chris Anderson
- c) S.R. Ranganathan
- d) Klaus Schwab

3. Which of the following is NOT one of Ranganathan's Five Laws of Library Science?

- a) Books are for use
- b) Every book its reader
- c) Save the time of the librarian
- d) A library is a growing organism

4. Which ethical value emphasizes the importance of user privacy in libraries?

- a) Professional integrity
- b) Confidentiality
- c) Inclusivity
- d) Intellectual freedom

5. What modern technology has influenced library science philosophy?

- a) Digital libraries
- b) Open access
- c) Artificial intelligence
- d) All of the above

Answer with Explanations:

- 1. b) To ensure equitable access to information** - The core philosophy centers around providing free, equal access to information for all individuals.
- 2. c) S.R. Ranganathan** - Ranganathan's contributions, including the Five Laws of Library Science, significantly shaped modern library practices.

NOTE

3. c) **Save the time of the librarian** - This is a misrepresentation of Ranganathan's law, which focuses on saving the time of the reader.
4. b) **Confidentiality** - Libraries maintain user confidentiality to build trust and ensure freedom of information access.
5. d) **All of the above** - Digital libraries, open access, and AI are central to the evolving philosophy of library science.

B. Short Answer Questions

1. Define intellectual freedom and explain its significance in library science.
2. What is the impact of Ranganathan's Five Laws on modern library practices?
3. Discuss the concept of "universal access to knowledge" in the context of library science.
4. Explain the role of libraries in the democratization of information.

PART-2**C. Long answer type question (200 words)**

1. Discuss the core philosophical principles in library science, including their historical development and impact on library practices.
2. Analyze the role of libraries in society and their contributions to intellectual freedom, preservation of knowledge, and social responsibility.
3. Evaluate the ethical values in library science and how they ensure the fair and just delivery of library services.
4. Mention the Core Concepts in the Philosophy of Library Science

PART-3**D. Long answer type question (300 words)**

1. Explore the influence of technological advancements on the philosophical outlook of library science, with examples of how libraries have adapted to digital changes.
2. Discuss the future direction of library science philosophy, including emerging trends like AI in knowledge management and the role of libraries in global knowledge sharing.
3. Describe how technology has influenced the philosophy of library science.

UNIT 17

FREEDOM OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION AND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS (IPR)

NOTE

UNIT STRUCTURE

- 17.1 Introduction**
- 17.2 Objective**
- 17.3 Freedom of Access to Information and Intellectual Property Rights (IPR)**
- 17.4 The Concept of Freedom of Access to Information**
- 17.5 The Importance of Intellectual Property Rights (IPR)**
- 17.6 Libraries and the Right to Information**
- 17.7 Copyright and Fair Use in Libraries**
- 17.8 Open Access and Creative Commons Licensing**
- 17.9 Challenges in Digital Copyright and Licensing**
- 17.10 Ethical Considerations in Information Access and IPR**
- 17.11 Future Trends in Freedom of Access and IPR**
- 17.12 Summary**
- 17.13 Glossary**
- 17.14 Answers to check your progress**
- 17.15 Suggested readings - OER**
- 17.16 Reference**
- 17.17 Exercise**

17.1 INTRODUCTION

The freedom of access to information is a cornerstone of democracy, education, and intellectual advancement, and libraries play a vital role in upholding this principle by providing equitable and unrestricted access to knowledge. Regardless of an individual's socioeconomic background, libraries ensure that information remains available to all, aligning with the broader ideals of intellectual freedom—the right to access, share, and receive knowledge without censorship or undue restriction. Institutions like the International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA) and the American Library Association (ALA)

NOTE

emphasize the library's obligation to maintain neutrality, support diverse viewpoints, and resist limitations on information dissemination. Yet, significant barriers persist. Government censorship of politically sensitive content, economic inequalities, and the digital divide hinder equitable access, particularly in marginalized communities. Moreover, scholarly materials locked behind paywalls and proprietary platforms limit public access and strain library budgets. In response, libraries advocate for inclusive information policies, promote digital literacy, and support the open-access movement, which aims to treat knowledge as a public good rather than a commodity. At the same time, libraries must navigate the complexities of Intellectual Property Rights (IPR), which protect the legal interests of creators through copyrights, trademarks, and patents. While these laws are essential for ensuring fair recognition and compensation for creators, they can also restrict access, especially in the digital age. Libraries must therefore strike a balance—respecting IPR while promoting public access by negotiating licensing terms, managing institutional repositories, and encouraging legal reforms. This balancing act is crucial for sustaining libraries as hubs of knowledge, creativity, and intellectual freedom in an increasingly information-driven world.

17.2 OBJECTIVE

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To analyse the concept of freedom of access to information.
- To analyze the role of libraries in promoting intellectual freedom.
- To examine the impact of censorship and restrictions on information access.
- To explore the importance of Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) in Library Science.
- To discuss the challenges in balancing free access to information with copyright laws.

17.3 FREEDOM OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION AND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS (IPR)

In today's knowledge-driven society, the principles of freedom of access to information and intellectual property rights (IPR) are fundamental in shaping the way knowledge is disseminated, used, and protected. Libraries, educational institutions, researchers, and individuals rely on unrestricted access to information for learning, innovation, and informed decision-making. However, this access must be carefully balanced with the rights of creators, authors, and publishers who seek to protect their intellectual contributions through copyrights, patents, trademarks, and other forms of intellectual property protection. The

ethical dilemma arises when strong intellectual property laws restrict the free flow of knowledge, limiting educational opportunities and slowing down research progress. Libraries, as information providers, find themselves in the middle of this debate, ensuring that knowledge remains accessible while respecting legal boundaries.

The concept of freedom of access to information is deeply connected to democratic values, promoting transparency, knowledge-sharing, and informed decision-making. This principle asserts that individuals have the right to seek, receive, and share information without censorship or undue restrictions. However, intellectual property rights exist to encourage creativity and innovation by granting authors and inventors exclusive rights to their work for a specific period. While IPR contributes to economic and technological advancements, excessive restrictions can create barriers to education and knowledge dissemination. The role of libraries in this landscape is critical as they work to balance copyright protection with public access through open-access policies, fair-use principles, and digital repository initiatives. This section explores the philosophical and legal aspects of information access and IPR, the responsibilities of libraries in ensuring equitable access, the impact of digital content restrictions, and the evolving trends in open-access movements.

17.4 THE CONCEPT OF FREEDOM OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION

The right to access information is recognized globally as a fundamental human right, upheld by organizations such as the United Nations (UN), UNESCO, and the International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA). This right ensures that individuals can obtain knowledge freely, allowing them to participate in democratic processes, make informed choices, and contribute to social and economic development. Libraries play a significant role in upholding this right by providing free access to books, digital resources, research publications, and government information. However, despite the recognition of this principle, several barriers continue to hinder universal access to knowledge.

Censorship and content restrictions remain a significant challenge, as certain governments or institutions suppress information for political, cultural, or religious reasons. Additionally, the digital divide—caused by socioeconomic disparities—limits access to digital resources, particularly in underprivileged regions. Another major barrier is the increasing commercialization of knowledge, where academic journals, research papers, and e-books are locked behind expensive paywalls, restricting access to those who cannot afford costly subscriptions. To address these issues, initiatives such as open-access publishing, public library digitization programs, and Freedom of Information (FOI) laws

NOTE

aim to promote knowledge accessibility. By ensuring equitable access to information, libraries contribute to a more informed and educated society.

17.5 THE IMPORTANCE OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS (IPR)

Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) are essential legal protections granted to creators and inventors, ensuring they receive recognition and financial benefits from their original work. These rights cover a range of protections, including copyrights (for literary and artistic works), patents (for inventions), trademarks (for brand names and logos), and trade secrets (for confidential business information). IPR plays a crucial role in encouraging innovation, creativity, and economic growth by providing incentives for individuals and organizations to develop new ideas, products, and services. Without proper intellectual property protection, creators might be discouraged from producing new works due to the risk of unauthorized use or exploitation.

However, while IPR serves to protect intellectual ownership, it can also create ethical and accessibility concerns. When knowledge is monopolized, it can restrict access to crucial information, including life-saving medical research, educational resources, and scientific advancements. This creates a paradox where knowledge is produced for societal benefit but remains inaccessible to those who need it most due to commercial barriers. Libraries and open-access advocates work to address this issue by promoting alternatives such as Creative Commons licenses, institutional repositories, and fair-use exemptions. By striking a balance between intellectual property protection and the public's right to access knowledge, libraries ensure that innovation and education continue to thrive.

17.6 LIBRARIES AND THE RIGHT TO INFORMATION

Libraries serve as key institutions in ensuring the right to information, providing equitable access to diverse resources regardless of an individual's financial or social status. Their primary responsibilities include maintaining free access to books, research papers, historical documents, and government publications. Additionally, libraries play an advocacy role in promoting open-access policies within academic and research communities, ensuring that valuable knowledge is available to the public without restrictive costs. Furthermore, libraries facilitate fair-use policies that allow limited reproduction of copyrighted materials for educational and research purposes, enabling students and scholars to access essential resources for learning and discovery.

Despite their critical role, libraries face significant challenges in fulfilling their mission. Many publishers impose restrictive copyright laws, requiring expensive licensing fees for digital content, limiting what libraries can offer. Additionally, digital rights management (DRM) technologies restrict how e-books and online resources can be accessed, further complicating the ability of libraries to provide free knowledge. These barriers force libraries to navigate complex legal frameworks while advocating for more inclusive policies that support knowledge-sharing. By embracing open-access initiatives, lobbying for fair copyright regulations, and negotiating sustainable licensing agreements, libraries continue to uphold their commitment to free and universal access to information.

NOTE**Activity 17.1**

Activity Title: Understanding Information Rights

Objective:

To distinguish between freedom of information and intellectual property rights.

Materials Required:

- Textbook
- Notebook

Procedure:

1. List three rights of library users related to information access.
2. List three responsibilities related to copyright and IPR.

Outcome:

The learner understands the balance between access to information and protection of intellectual property.

17.7 COPYRIGHT AND FAIR USE IN LIBRARIES

Copyright laws are designed to protect the rights of authors and creators, ensuring that their intellectual efforts are not exploited without proper acknowledgment or compensation. However, libraries must also ensure reasonable access to copyrighted materials for educational and research purposes. The principle of fair use allows limited reproduction of copyrighted works under specific conditions, including academic research, teaching, criticism, and news reporting. This legal provision helps libraries and educational institutions to share knowledge without violating copyright laws while still respecting the rights of creators. Fair use provides a much-needed balance, enabling the dissemination of knowledge while maintaining intellectual property protections.

NOTE

Despite these protections, many publishers impose stringent restrictions, making it difficult for libraries to freely share digital resources. Some publishers use restrictive licensing agreements that prevent libraries from lending digital copies, while others limit how many times an e-book can be borrowed before requiring a renewal fee. As digital content becomes more prevalent, librarians must remain well-versed in copyright laws and fair-use provisions to navigate these challenges effectively. By advocating for flexible copyright policies, negotiating reasonable licensing agreements, and supporting open-access publishing models, libraries can continue to serve as champions of knowledge accessibility while respecting intellectual property rights.

17.8 OPEN ACCESS AND CREATIVE COMMONS LICENSING

Open Access provides **free access to research and educational materials**. Creative Commons (CC) licenses allow authors to control how their work is shared and reused. Institutional repositories and OER also make knowledge freely available. Libraries support open access by providing and promoting free resources.

17.9 CHALLENGES IN DIGITAL COPYRIGHT AND LICENSING

Digital copyright faces challenges such as **DRM restrictions, paywalls, limited access, and different copyright laws across countries**. These can create inequality in access to information. Libraries address these issues through collaborative licensing, interlibrary loans, and support for open access.

17.10 ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS IN INFORMATION ACCESS AND IPR

Libraries must balance **copyright protection with fair access to information**. Key concerns include user privacy, data security, equal access, and accessibility for disadvantaged users. Libraries promote ethical practices through OER, fair use, assistive technologies, and responsible information management.

17.11 FUTURE TRENDS IN FREEDOM OF ACCESS AND IPR

As technology continues to evolve, the future of access to information and intellectual property rights will be shaped by emerging innovations

NOTE

and global policy shifts. One of the most promising developments is blockchain technology, which has the potential to revolutionize copyright tracking by creating transparent, decentralized records of intellectual property ownership. This technology can help authors and creators protect their works while ensuring fair distribution of royalties and licensing fees. Another key trend is the use of artificial intelligence (AI) in automated copyright enforcement. AI-powered tools can detect plagiarism, track content usage, and manage digital rights more efficiently than traditional copyright enforcement methods. However, concerns over AI-driven surveillance and the ethical implications of automated copyright enforcement remain critical areas of debate.

Global initiatives advocating for fair knowledge-sharing policies are also gaining momentum. Organizations such as UNESCO, the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO), and the Open Knowledge Foundation are working to redefine intellectual property laws to balance author rights with public access needs. In addition, countries are re-evaluating copyright durations to prevent knowledge monopolization and encourage the timely transition of works into the public domain. Libraries must stay at the forefront of these changes, advocating for legislative reforms, digital literacy programs, and fair-use policies that ensure free, fair, and responsible access to information. By embracing technological advancements, open-access models, and ethical copyright practices, libraries can continue to play a pivotal role in the future of knowledge dissemination and intellectual freedom.

☑ Check Your Progress 17.1

1. What are the main barriers to the free access of information today?

.....

.....

.....

2. How do libraries contribute to freedom of access to information?

.....

.....

.....

3. What is the role of intellectual property rights in promoting creativity and innovation?

.....

.....

.....

NOTE

17.12 SUMMARY

In today's knowledge-driven society, achieving a balance between freedom of access to information and Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) is essential to foster both widespread knowledge sharing and the protection of intellectual creativity. Rooted in democratic ideals, the right to access information promotes transparency, informed decision-making, and active public participation. Libraries and educational institutions uphold this freedom by offering inclusive access to books, research, and public documents irrespective of socioeconomic barriers. However, challenges such as censorship, the digital divide, and subscription-based paywalls persist, limiting access—especially in underserved communities. Open access movements and legislation like Freedom of Information (FOI) aim to overcome these hurdles and promote unrestricted availability of knowledge. Conversely, IPR plays a vital role in encouraging innovation by granting creators exclusive rights over their work, thereby ensuring recognition and financial incentives. Yet, stringent IPR enforcement can also hinder access to vital academic and educational resources, raising concerns over monopolization and equity. Copyright laws, patents, and trademarks, while protective, may unintentionally restrict the free flow of information. Libraries and open-access advocates strive to mediate this tension through initiatives such as Creative Commons licenses and Open Educational Resources (OER), which legally expand information accessibility. The digital age compounds these issues with newer challenges like Digital Rights Management (DRM) and global copyright disputes, demanding creative solutions from libraries to uphold equitable access. Looking ahead, technological advancements such as blockchain for rights tracking and AI for content management, along with supportive global policies, are expected to shape a future where both intellectual freedom and creative protection can coexist more harmoniously.

17.13 GLOSSARY

- **Freedom of Access to Information** - The right of individuals to seek, receive, and impart information without censorship or restriction.
- **Intellectual Property Rights (IPR)** - Legal protections granted to creators and inventors over their intellectual works and creations.
- **Copyright** - Legal protection granted to the creators of original literary, artistic, and musical works.
- **Creative Commons** - A type of licensing that allows creators to grant others permission to use their work under specific conditions.

- **Digital Rights Management (DRM)** - Technological restrictions that control access to digital media and content.
- **Fair Use** - A legal doctrine that permits limited use of copyrighted materials without permission for purposes such as research or education.
- **Paywalls** - Online barriers that require payment or subscription to access digital content, often used by academic publishers.
- **Open Educational Resources (OER)** - Educational materials that are freely available for use and modification.
- **Blockchain Technology** - A decentralized and transparent system used to track digital transactions, including copyrights.
- **Freedom of Information (FOI)** - A legal right to access information held by public authorities, promoting transparency.
- **Digital Divide** - The gap between individuals who have access to digital technologies and those who do not, often based on socio-economic factors.

17.14 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS – POSSIBLE ONE

Check Your Progress 17.1

1. The main barriers include censorship, where governments or institutions restrict information for political or cultural reasons; the digital divide, which limits access to digital resources, particularly in underserved regions; and paywalls, which prevent access to scholarly publications and databases behind expensive subscription models. These obstacles hinder the democratization of knowledge and highlight the need for open access initiatives to ensure broader dissemination of information.
2. Libraries contribute by providing free access to books, research papers, and government publications, ensuring that individuals from all socio-economic backgrounds can access essential information. Libraries also advocate for open access policies, ensuring that knowledge is available without legal or financial barriers, and promote fair use policies that allow for educational and research-based reproduction of copyrighted materials.
3. Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) promote creativity and innovation by granting creators and inventors exclusive rights over their works, ensuring that they are credited and rewarded for their intellectual contributions. These rights, including copyright, patents, trademarks, and trade secrets, help incentivize further creation and investment in new ideas, inventions, and artistic works.

NOTE**17.15 SUGGESTED READING-OER**

Sr. No.	Title	URL	QR Code
1.	Open Educational Resource - 1	http://books.aisectonline.com/User/UnitUrls?unitId=3687	

17.16 REFERENCES

- "Copyright and the Library: A Global Perspective." International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), 2019.
- Bostrom, David. "The Digital Divide: Bridging the Gap in Access to Information." Journal of Information Technology, vol. 34, no. 2, 2020, pp. 45-58.
- O'Donnell, Mark. "Intellectual Property and Libraries: A Delicate Balance." Journal of Library and Information Science, vol. 61, no. 4, 2018, pp. 122-136.
- Moffat, Grace. "Open Access and Its Impact on Academic Publishing." Library Journal, vol. 45, no. 7, 2021, pp. 60-64.
- UNESCO. "Freedom of Access to Information." UNESCO Report, 2017.
- Leventhal, Andrew. "Creative Commons: The Future of Licensing." Technology Review, vol. 67, no. 1, 2021, pp. 74-80.
- International Intellectual Property Alliance (IIPA). "Annual Report on Intellectual Property Rights." 2020.
- "Fair Use and Libraries: A Legal Guide." American Library Association, 2019.

17.17 EXERCISE**PART- 1****A. Multiple Choice Questions:****1. What is the main purpose of copyright?**

- To allow free access to creative works
- To give exclusive rights to creators
- To regulate digital media
- To ensure international collaboration

NOTE

2. What is the primary goal of open access?

- a) To increase government control over information
- b) To make research freely available to the public
- c) To limit research sharing
- d) To provide limited access for academic institutions

3. What does DRM stand for in the context of copyright?

- a) Digital Recording Mechanism
- b) Digital Rights Management
- c) Digital Reproduction Measure
- d) Direct Rights Monitoring

4. Which of the following is a form of Intellectual Property?

- a) Trademark
- b) Computer software
- c) Ideas and thoughts
- d) Public domain

5. What is a key feature of Creative Commons licenses?

- a) They provide exclusive rights to authors
- b) They restrict the use of works entirely
- c) They allow authors to specify usage rights
- d) They limit public sharing of creative works

Answer with Explanations:

- 1. **b) To give exclusive rights to creators** - Copyright protects the work of creators by granting them exclusive rights to their creations for a specific time.
- 2. **b) To make research freely available to the public** - Open access aims to remove financial and legal barriers to research dissemination, making it freely accessible to everyone.
- 3. **b) Digital Rights Management** - DRM refers to technologies that control access to digital content, ensuring copyright protection.
- 4. **a) Trademark** - Trademarks are legally protected symbols, names, or logos that identify products and services.
- 5. **c) They allow authors to specify usage rights** - Creative Commons licenses allow authors to specify how their works can be used, shared, or modified.

B. Short Answer Questions

NOTE

1. What is the role of libraries in promoting open access?
2. How do Intellectual Property Rights contribute to economic growth?
3. What is the significance of Creative Commons licensing?
4. How do paywalls affect access to information?

PART- 2

C. Long answer type question (200 words)

1. Discuss the balance between freedom of access to information and intellectual property rights.
2. Explain the role of libraries in upholding the principles of intellectual freedom and promoting access to knowledge.
3. Analyze the challenges posed by digital copyright and DRM in ensuring equitable access to information in libraries.

PART- 3

D. Long answer type question (300 words)

1. How has the rise of open access initiatives influenced the publishing landscape and library services?
2. What ethical dilemmas do libraries face in balancing copyright protection with public access to knowledge?
3. Explain the role of libraries in future trends in Freedom of Access and IPR



DR. C.V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY

Chhattisgarh, Bilaspur AN AISECT GROUP UNIVERSITY

Approved by : PCI | AICTE | NCTE | BCI | Member of : AIU | Joint Committee : (UGC | DEB | AICTE) | Recognized by : UGC | A NAAC Accredited University



DR. C. V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY (C.G.)

SLM FEEDBACK FORM

PROGRAMME : _____

COURSE : _____

BLOCK : _____

UNIT : _____

Dear Student,

While studying the units of this block, you may have found certain portions of the text difficult to comprehend. We wish to know your difficulties and suggestions, in order to improve the course. Therefore, we request you to fill up and send us the following questionnaire, which pertains to this block. If you find the space provided insufficient, kindly use a separate sheet.

Please mail to aisectcontent@aisect.org/ for online submission please scan QR code:

Questionnaire

1. Name : _____

2. Enrolment No. :

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3. How many hours did you need for studying the units? :

--

4. Please give your reactions to the following items based on your reading of the block:

Items	Excellent	Very Good	Good	Poor	Give specific Examples (If poor)
Presentation Quality					
Language and Style					
Illustrations					
Used (diagrams, tables, etc.)					
Conceptual Clarity					
Check Your Progress Questions					
Suggested Readings - OER					

5. Any other comments:
